



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

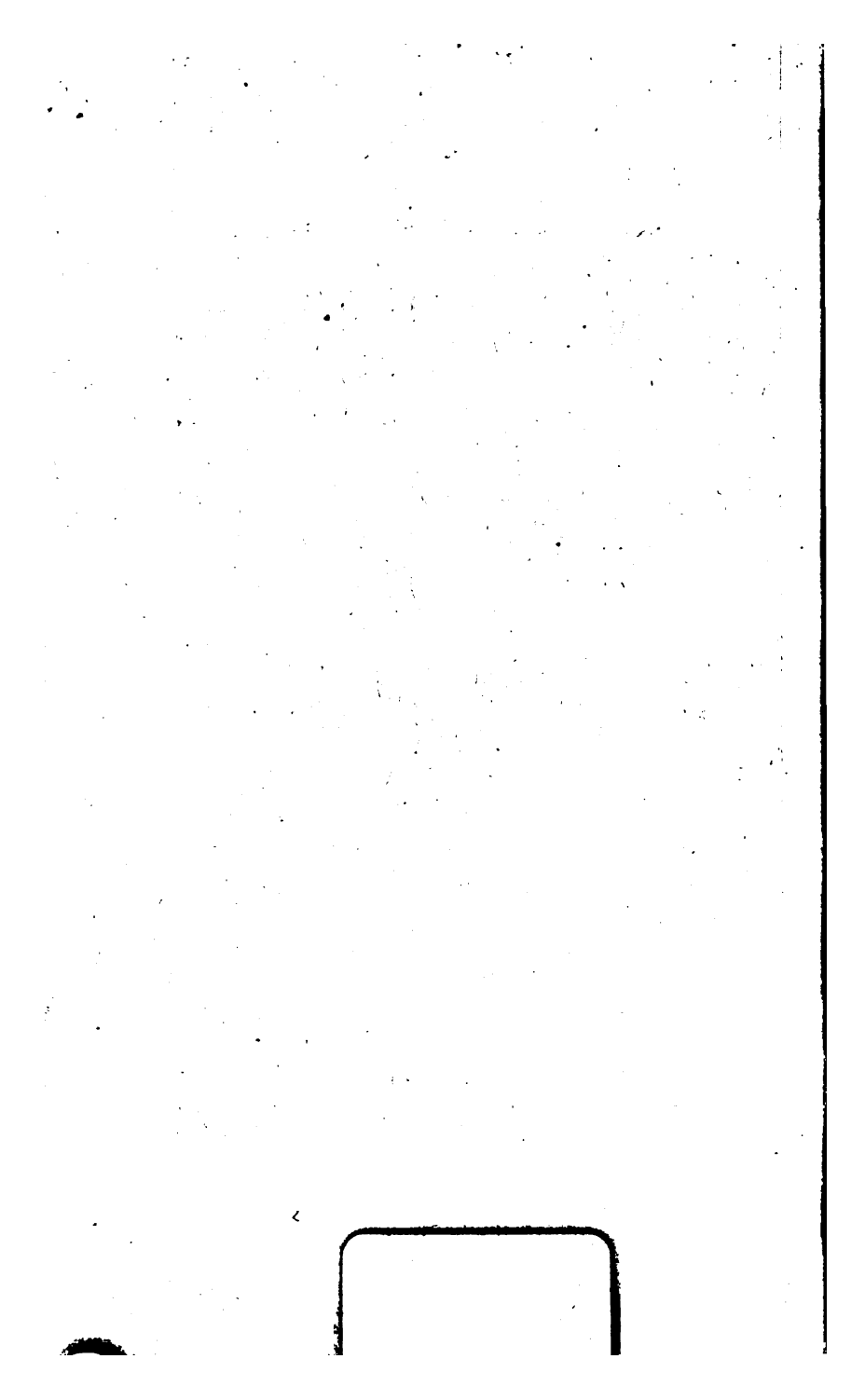
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

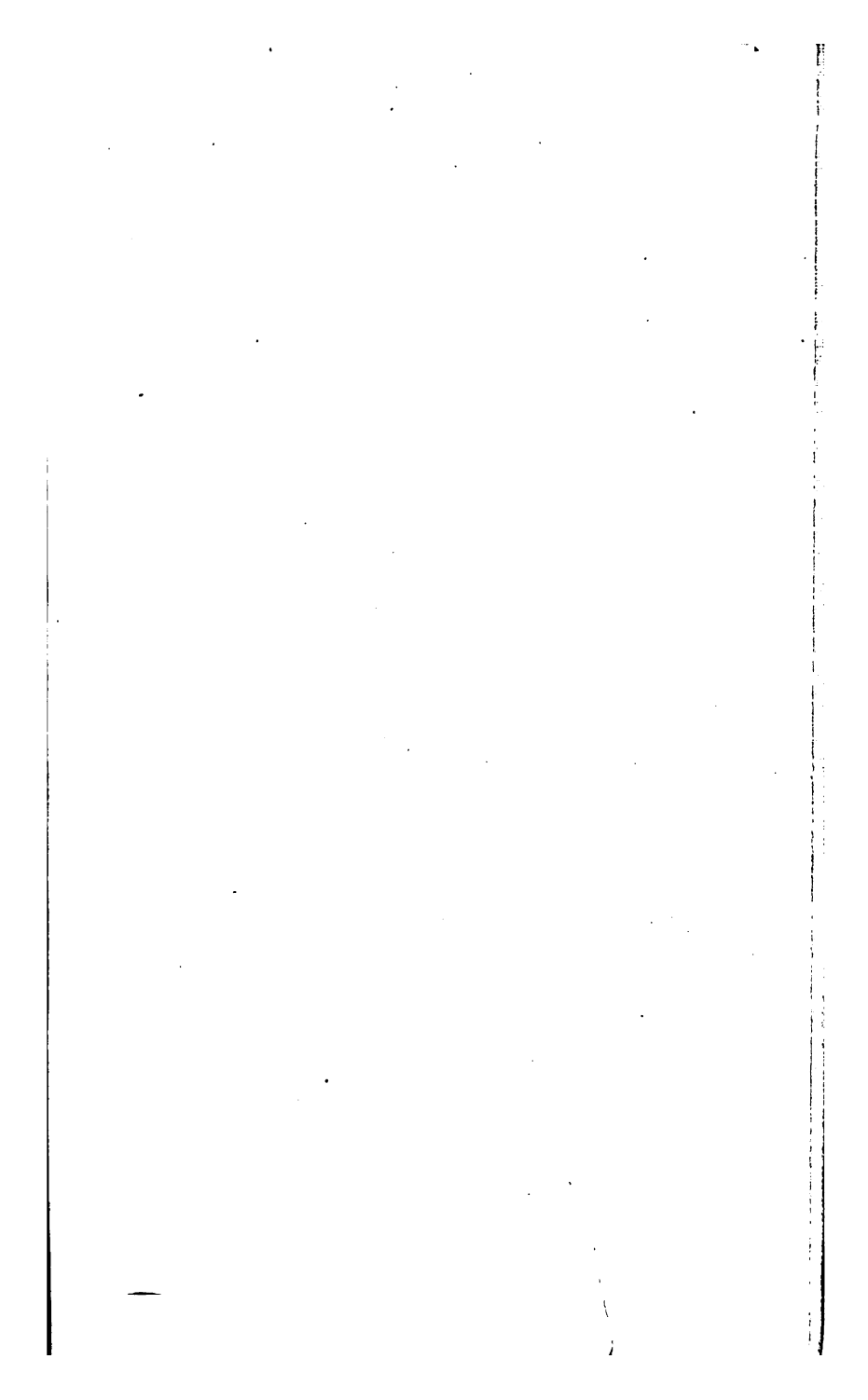
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

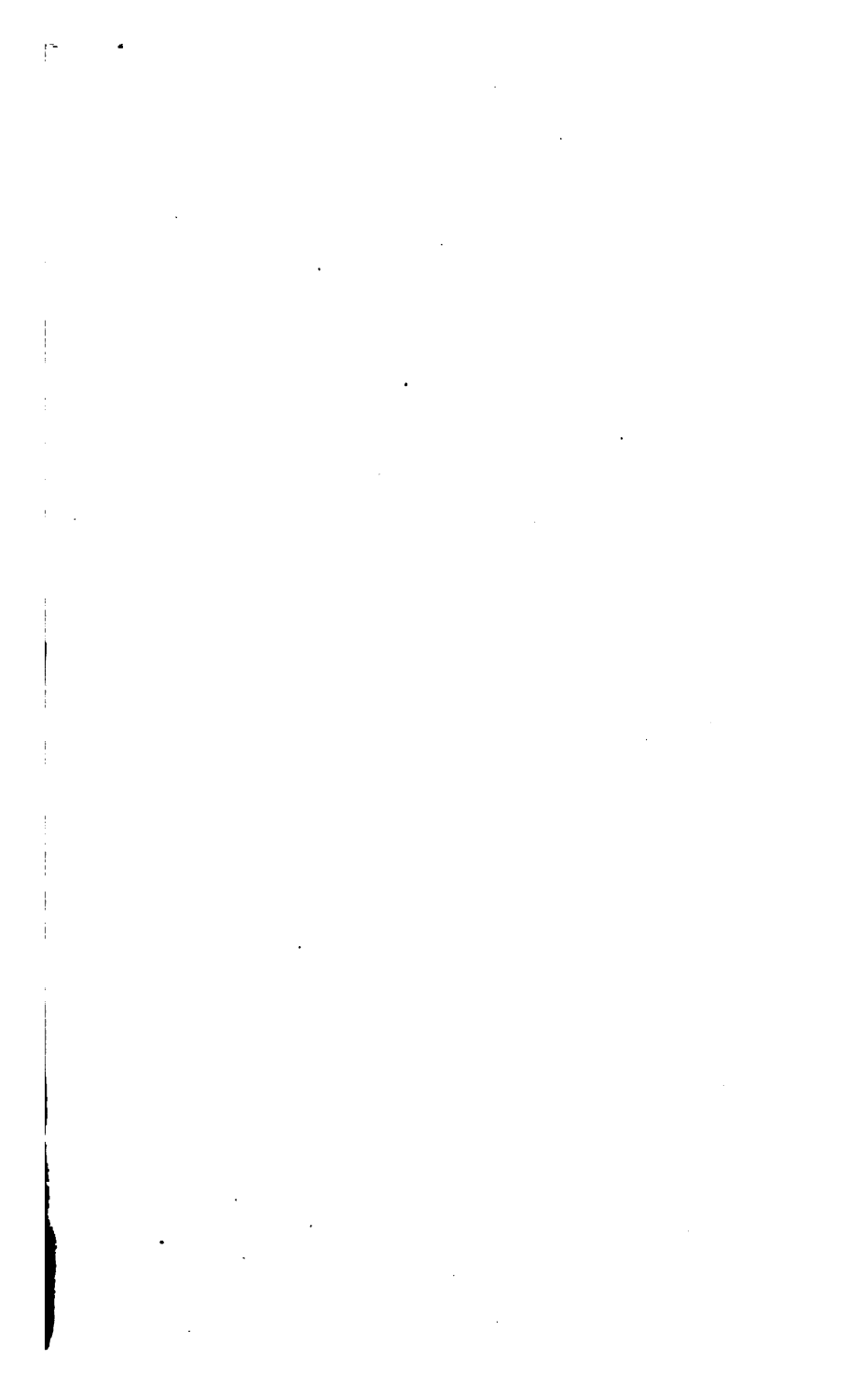
About Google Book Search

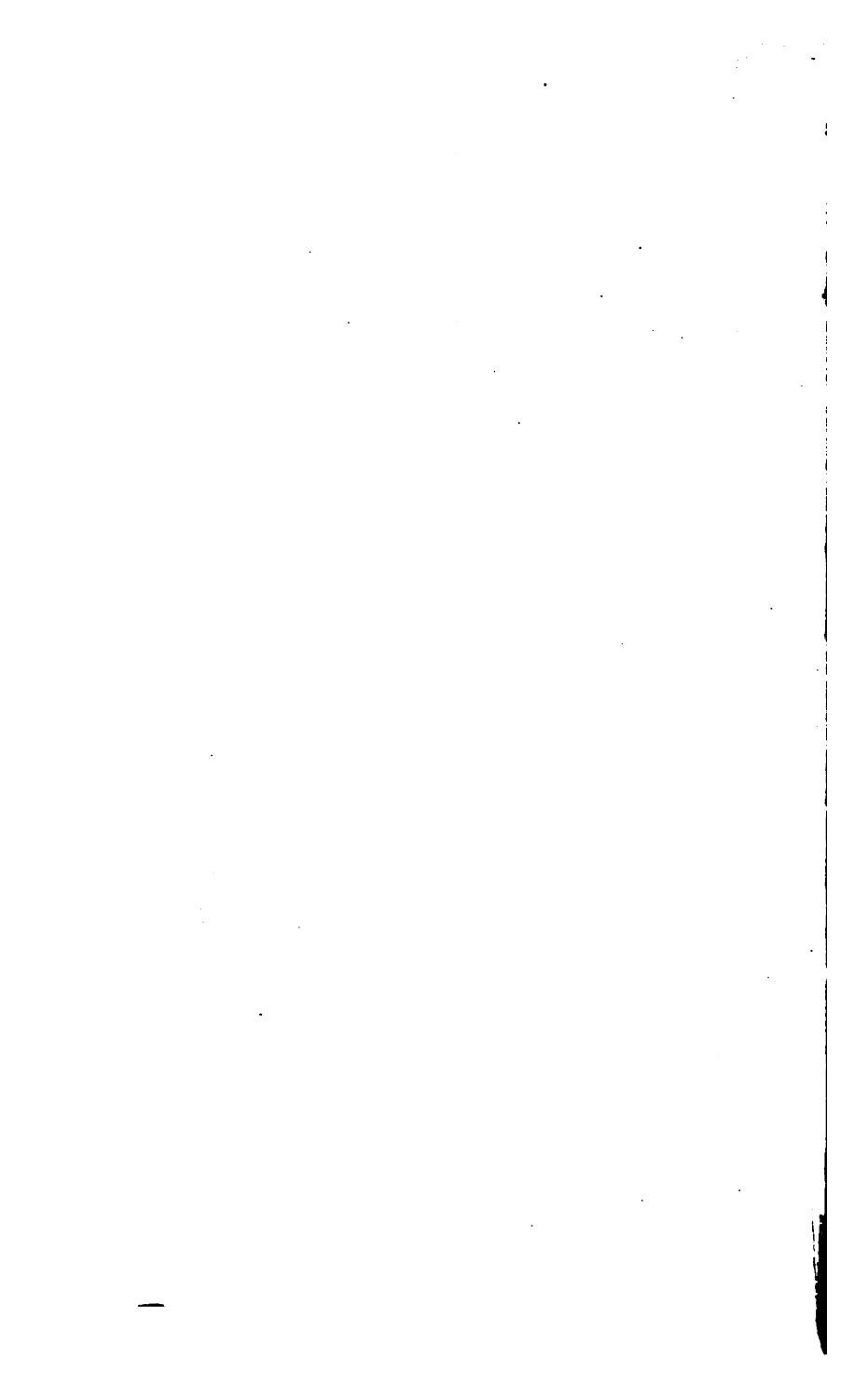
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Thomas
NAK

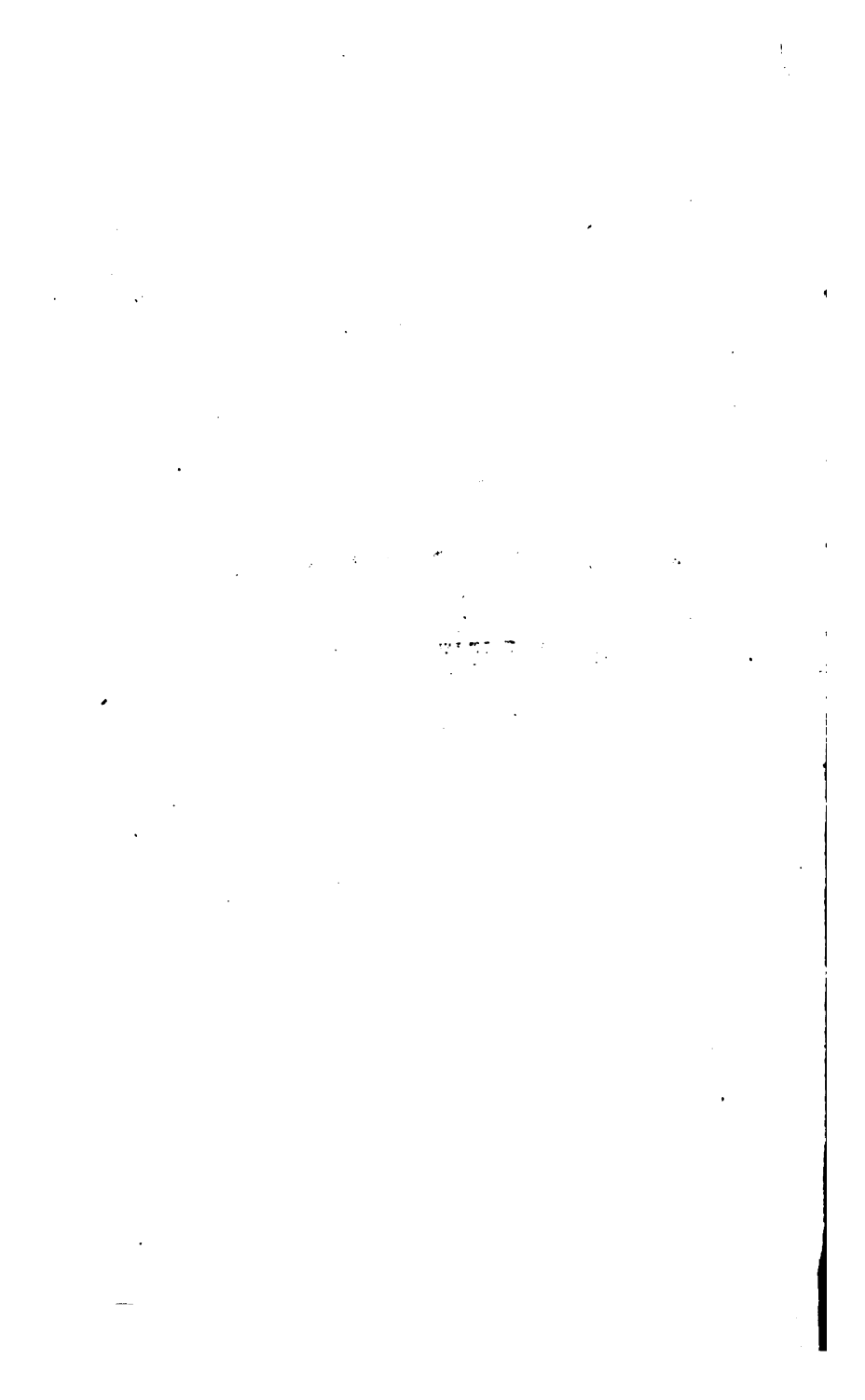






EARLY
ENGLISH PROSE ROMANCES.

VOLUME II.



EARLY
English Prose Romances,

WITH

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL INTRODUCTIONS.

EDITED BY

WILLIAM J. THOMS, F.S.A.

• SECOND EDITION, ENLARGED.

VOL. II.

VIRGILIUS.
ROBIN HOOD.
GEORGE A GREEN.
TOM A LINCOLNE.



LONDON:

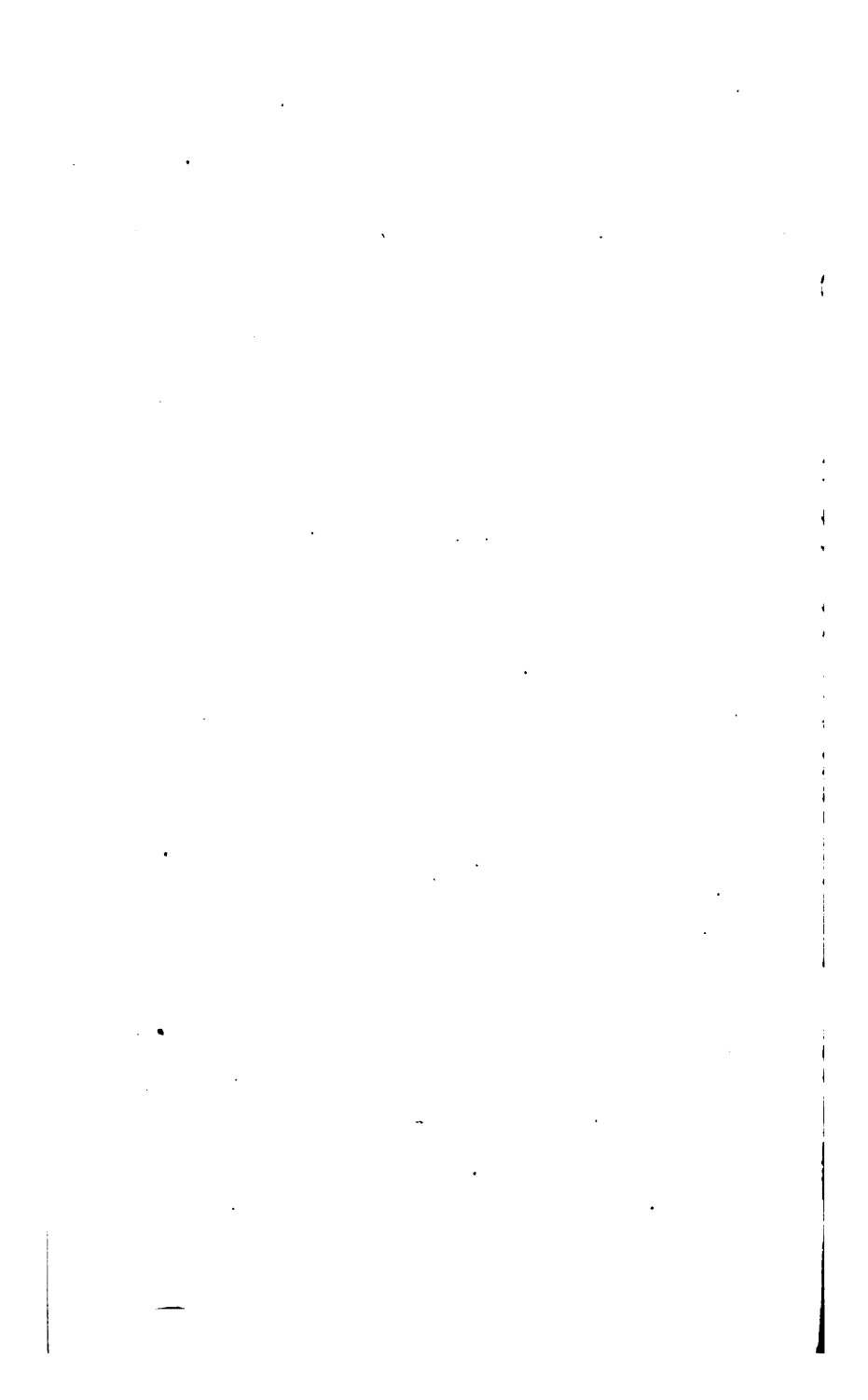
NATTALI AND BOND, BEDFORD STREET,
COVENT GARDEN.

1858.

64
RECEIVED
JUN 15
1858

NOT VON
JULIEN
VERFASST

VIRGILIUS.



VIRGILIUS.

THE Lyfe of Virgilius is perhaps the most curious production of an age which having dubbed the heroes of antiquity with the characters of knight-errants, with equal judgment and consistency transformed the ancient poets and philosophers into necromancers and magicians. They who could not recognize valour in any other form than in the institutions of chivalry, might well be supposed to consider genius and learning as identical with a knowledge of the magical sciences. Accordingly, while the romantic histories of Hercules and of Jason, of Alexander and of Cæsar, delighted the world by their details of the valorous exploits of those redoubted champions, we find the poet Virgil* no less an object of renown and admiration, for his consummate skill in the craft of necromancy, and

* There can be little doubt but the poet of the Augustan Age, and the necromancer of the dark ages is one and the same person. Similar honours have been conferred upon Horace, in the neighbourhood of Palestrina, where he is still revered by the people as a powerful and benevolent wizard.—Warton's *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, vol. 3. p. 62. note by the Editor.

for the wonders which he was thereby enabled to perform.

Two causes have been supposed to have exerted their influence in procuring for the Mantuan bard the character of a magician; the first is that which is with great plausibility advanced by Ruæus in his *Life of the Poet*.

“*Maium* illum, avum Virgilii, exemplaria vitæ omnia *Magum* vocant. At cùm ejus filia, Virgilii mater, juxta omnes *Maia* dicta sit, omninò Majæ pater fuit Majus, non Magus: indeque ortum existimo, ut Virgilius magicis artibus imbutus fuisse creditus sit ab Elinando monacho, aliisque sequioris sæculi scriptoribus: quòd et Eclogâ septimâ quadam sacra descripsisset et peritus esset multarum artium, et precipuè avum habuisse *Magum* diceretur:” the second, that knowledge of the mathematical sciences which has always been attributed to him, the learned discussion on magical subjects contained in his eighth eclogue; and says Mr. Dunlop, in his *History of Fiction*, “This belief in the magical powers of Virgil, may have received confirmation from the sixth book of the *Æneid* in which the secrets of the world unknown are so mysteriously revealed:—

“Dii, quibus imperium est animarum, umbræque silentes,
Et Chaos, et Phlegethon, loca nocte silentia late;
Sit mihi fas audita loqui; sit numine vestro
Pandere res alta terra et caligine mersas.”

But to whichever of these causes the Poet may have been indebted for his necromantic fame, he appears to have been in the full enjoyment of it previous to the beginning of the thirteenth century, at which time the legends concerning him were inserted in the *Otia Imperialia* of Gervase of Tilbury, who having visited Naples was a witness of many of those wonders which were then to be seen, and was informed by his host the Archdeacon Pinatellus concerning the remainder.* In this extravagant compilation we are told that Virgil set up a brazen fly on one of the gates of Naples which remained there eight years, during which time it did not permit any other fly to enter the city. That in the same place he caused a shambles to be erected, wherein meat never smelt or was the least tainted. That on another gate of the same city he placed two immense images of stone, one of which was handsome and merry, the other sad and deformed, and which were indued with such magical power that if any one

* For a specimen of this extraordinary production, vide Appendix. A very interesting Selection from it has lately been published by my learned friend, Professor Liebrecht, under the title of *Des Gervasius von Tilbury Otia Imperialia. In einer Auswahl neu herausgegeben und mit Anmerkungen begleitet von Felix Liebrecht. Ein Beitrag zur Deutschen Mythologie und Sagenforschung.* 8vo. Hannover, 1856.

came in by the side of the former all his affairs prospered, while if he approached by the latter he was disappointed and unfortunate: that he set up on a high mountain near Naples a brazen statue, having in its mouth a trumpet which sounded so loud when the north wind blew, that the fire and smoke issuing out of those forges of Vulcan which are at this day seen near the city of Puossola, were forced back towards the sea, without doing any hurt or injury to the inhabitants. That it was he made the baths capable of removing every disorder, with fair inscriptions in letters of gold, defaced since by the physicians of Salerno who were troubled that men should thereby know what diseases every bath could cure. That the same Virgil took a course no man could be hurt in that miraculous vault cut through the mountain of Pausilippo, to go to Naples; and lastly that he made a public fire, whereat every one might freely warm himself; near which he had placed a brazen archer with his arrow drawn out, and this inscription, "If any one strike me, I will shoot off my arrow." Which at length happened, when a certain fool, striking the said archer, he immediately shot him with his arrow and sent him into the fire, which was presently extinguished.*

* Vide Davies' translation of Naudæus, p. 289, et seq.

These fables were transcribed by Gervase's contemporary, Helinandus the monk, into his Universal Chronicle, and were also introduced by Alexander Neckham, a Benedictine monk who studied at Paris in the thirteenth century, into his book *De natura Rerum*, (book 6) with many important additions.

In particular we are told that Naples being troubled with an infinite number of infectious leeches, it was delivered as soon as Virgil had caused a golden one to be cast into a well: that he surrounded his dwelling and garden (where it never rained) with an immoveable stream of air, which served the purposes of a wall; and that he constructed a brazen bridge which took him wheresoever he pleased. That he also made a steeple with such miraculous artifice, that the tower wherein it was, though of stone, moved in the same manner as a certain bell, that was in it did, and that both had the same shaking and motion: and also that he formed those statues called the Preservers of Rome, which were watched night and day by priests, for that as soon as any nation entertained the thought of revolting against the Roman empire, immediately the statue representing that nation, and adored by it, moved; a bell it had about the neck sounded, and with its finger it so pointed out which was the rebellious nation, that the name of it might be

perceived in writing, which the Priest carrying to the emperor he immediately raised an army to reduce and quiet it.

Similar fables concerning Virgil have been mentioned by Gower in his *Confessio Amantis*, by Symphorianus Champier, and Albertus de Elib, by Tostatus Bishop of Avila, who ranks Virgil among those that practised necromancy, and by Vincent of Beauvais, who speaks among other wonderful things done by him, of his fabricating those brazen statues at Rome called Salvacio Romæ. This fiction is mentioned by the old anonymous author of the *Mirabilia Roma* written in the thirteenth century and printed by Montfaucon. It also occurs in Lydgate's *Bochas*. He is speaking of the Pantheon.

Whyche was a temple of old foundation,
 Ful of ydola, up set on hye stages ;
 There throughe the worlde of every nacion
 Were of theyr goddes set up great ymages,
 To euery kingdom direct were their visages
 As poetes and Fulgens by hys live
 In bokes olde plainly doth dyscrive.

Every ymage had in his hande a bell,
 As apperteyneth to every nacion,
 Which by craft some token should tell
 Whan any kingdom fil in rebellion, &c.

It would appear too that the story of the Egg on

which the fate of the town of Naples depended was an article of current belief during the middle ages; for by the statutes of the order Du Saint Esprit, instituted in 1352, a Chapter of the knights is appointed to be held annually at the Castle of the Enchanted Egg near the grotto of Virgil. Montfaucon, vol. 2, p. 329. "But since the authors," says Naudeus,* "who have made mention of the magic of Virgil are so many that they cannot be examined one after the other, without loss of much time and abundance of repetitions, we must imitate the Civilians who take authorities per saturam, and so digesting all that remains into one article, show that De Loyer *de Spectris*, lib. 1. c. 6, makes mention of his Echo; Paracelsus, *Tractatus de imag.* c. 11, of his magical images and figures; Helmoldus, *Hist. Slavor.* lib. 4. c. 19, of his representation of the city of Naples shut up in a glass bottle; Sibyllus, *Peregr. quæst.* de cad. 3. c. 2, questione, and the Author of the *Image of the World*, of the head he made to know things to come by; Petrarch in *Itinerario*, and Theodric a Niem, *Lib. 3, de schismat.* c. 19, of the vault he made at Naples at the request of Augustus; Vigenere, of *Cyphers*, cap. 19, p. 330, of his alphabets; Trithemius *Antipal.* lib. 4. c. 3, of his book of Tables and Calculations whereby to find out the genius of all persons; and lastly of

* Naudeus, *History of Magic*, p. 294.

those who have seen the cabinet of the Duke of Florence, of an extraordinary great looking-glass, which they affirm to be that in which this poet exercised Catoptromancy."

Such legendary tales as these, therefore, not only excited the public mind in favour of a Romance which should adopt the principal actor in them for its hero, but supplied ample materials for its production. Two editions are extant of the old French Romance: "*Les faits merveilleux de Virgile fils d'un Chevalier des Ardennes*:" one in 4to, printed at Paris, by Jean Trepperel; the other in 8vo, likewise printed at Paris, by Guill. Myuerd, neither of them dated.

The work also exists in Flemish, as will presently be seen from the note by the late Francis Douce, although I have been unable to find any mention of it in Mone's interesting volume on the Popular Literature of the Low Countries. But as such is the case, and the English translation was printed in the Low Countries, there can be little doubt that it was translated from such Flemish or Dutch version.

Two editions of the English translation are known, one is in the Garrick collection of the British Museum, which is too imperfect (save from the evidence of its type and wood cuts, which appear to be Copland's) to designate by whom it was printed: the other, printed at Amsterdam by John Doesborcke, of which

the only copy known was in the possession of Mr. Douce, from which Mr. Utterson was enabled to reprint an impression of fifty copies on paper, and one on vellum, for private distribution; and from such reprint the present publication was kindly permitted Mr. Douce and Mr. Utterson: the Editor must also acknowledge himself to have received considerable assistance from the valuable notice prefixed by the latter gentleman.

The present romance may be considered with considerable probability as having had its origin among the fictions of the East. The incident of Virgil releasing the fiend from the hole in which he was confined must have been derived from the tale of the Fisherman and the Genie in the 11th of the *Arabian Nights' Entertainments*, which is said to be still a prevalent superstition in the East. The intrigue also of Virgil with the Sultan's daughter much resembles the adventures to be found in the Eastern romances. In one of the French Fabliaux, entitled *Lai d' Hippocrate* (Le Grand, vol. 1. p. 232.) there is an absurd story of that physician being pulled half way up a tower in a basket by a lady of whom he was enamoured, and then left suspended, that he might be exposed to the ridicule of the multitude. A similar story is related of Virgilius, and is one of the most popular

concerning him : Stephen Hawes in his *Pastime of Pleasure* gives this adventure with ludicrous minuteness, and Gratian du Pont thought it worthy insertion into his *Controversies of the two Sexes*, male and female, printed at Thoulouse, 1534, as a demonstration of the malice and wickedness of women. It is curious that at this day there is a chapel at Rome called Santa Maria, built in the first ages of the church, and which is likewise denominated "Bocca della verita," on account of a large round mask, with an enormous mouth, fixed up in the vestibule. Tradition says, that in former times the Romans, in order to give a more solemn confirmation to oaths, were wont to put their hands into this mouth, and that if a person took a false oath, his hand would have been bitten off:—it is scarcely necessary to point out the resemblance between this legend and that of the metal serpent constructed by Virgil.

Since this Introduction was first written the story of Virgilius has attracted the attention of many writers; and those who would thoroughly investigate the History of the Romance are referred to a long list of authorities on the subject, which is given by von der Hagen in the second volume of his *Gesammt-abenteuer*, s. cxxv. and to the notes of F. W. V. Schmidt in his *Beitrage zur Geschichte der Roman-tischen Poesie*.

I am indebted to the German Editor of the Early Prose Romances,* R. O. Spazier for a reference to the curious old Italian Poem, containing the Mantuan Legend of Virgil, published by Muratori in his *Antiq. Italic. Medii Aevi*, tom. V. The Poem is entitled "Aliprandina ossia Chronica delle Citta di Mantova di Buonamente Aliprando, cittadino Mantuano," and the Legend of Virgil in the third chapter (Di Virgilio Mantuano, gran Poeta, dalle sua Nativita fino alla morte) commences as follows :

Mantova un suo Cittadino avia,
Per dritto nome Figulo chiamato.
Ricco e pieno tra gli altri si tenia.
Era in natural molto riputato.
La donna sua *Maja* si chiamava,
Ch'era nata da un uomo scienzato.
Una notte la donna se sognava,
Che fuor del corpo suo producea.
Un ramo Lauro, che fior si portava.
E quello ramo poi pomi faccia
E una verga le pareva di vedere,
Che fiore e frutto assai si se avia.
Questa donna pur si volea sapere,
Quel, che questo suo sogno le indicava
Innanzi che venisse al partorire.
Un Astrologo grande domandava,

* *Alt Englische Sagen und Marchen nach alten Vaehrbuchern herausgegeben* von William J. Thoms. *Deutsch und mit Zusätzen* von Richard Otto Spazier, 1es Bandchen, Brunswick, 1830.

Che'l suo sogno le dovesse spianare,
 E quello a lei molto la confortava.
 Dicea: " voi vi dovete confortare
 Di questo sogno che vi so bendire,
 Che voi v'avete molto a rallegrare.
 Un figlio maschio avete a partorire.
 Sarà saggio, e di scienza ben' imbuto,
 Non si troverà simil' al ver dire.
 E perche 'l sogno vostro sia compiuto,
 Per segno della *verga* de li fiori
Virgilio per suo nome sia mettuto."

I cannot better conclude this Introduction than by printing the memoranda made from time to time in his copy of the Romance by my late honoured and respected friend, Francis Douce, of whose kindness to me when a very young antiquary, I am glad to have this appropriate opportunity of making a public acknowledgment. They are as follows :

" In the Mem. de Trevoux, 1743, p. 705, is a letter on the pretended magick of Virgil, in which the following matters alone are worth notice :—

1. Virgil first mentioned as a magician by Gerv. Tilb. in his *Otia Imperii* (? if not after Vinc. de Beauvais ?)

2. Mentioned in the same way by Helinard in his *Chronicle*.

3. Mentioned in "*Le Miroir du Monde*, Genève,

1517, par Jac. Vivien," in verse. He cites Vinc. de Beauvais.

4. Mentioned in "La fleur de toutes les histoires, par Jean Mansel."

MS. in the library of Card. Richelieu, about 1430. He relates the story of the basket, and the author of the letter wishes there had been a miniature to represent Virgil as Don Quixote suspended by the malice of Maritorna. He was not aware of the old prints on this subject.

See "Notices du MSS. (de Roi)," tom. v. 253.

Some Virgilian magic stories are in Bromiard's Summa Predicantium. See that of the Mirror in fo. xxxix^b, and of the Statues in fo. lvii^b.

They used to shew Virgil's magick mirror in the treasury of S. Denis, where Mr. Evelyn saw it in 1643. See Pere Donblet's Hist. of the Abbey of S. Denis, p. 347.

Selden, in his work "De Diis Syris," p. 33, quotes Arnoldi Historia Slavorum for an image of Naples in a phial, made by Virgil.

See Mons. Paris's edition of the "Roman de Berthe," fo. xlvii, for an anecdote of Virgil in Adenez's romance of Cleomades.

This work was probably translated from the French, in which language there are two ancient editions.

See Goujet, Biblioth. Franc. ix. 225.

"Les faitz Merveilleux de Virgille. Paris, Guill. Niverd. 8°." In the National Library at Paris. See the Catal. tom. ii. p. 5. and de Bure, No. 3857.

This note copied in Mr. Scott's Tristrem, p. 318.

See "Melanges d'une grande bibliotheque," tom. E. p. 181.

See Vincent de Beauvais, Specul. Historiale, v. 117. lib. xxx. c. 109.

"Eene schone historie Van Virgilius, van zijn leven, Doot ende van zijn wonderlijcke werken di hy deede by nigromantien ende by dat behulfe des Duyvels. T' Amsterdam, by H. S. Muller, 1552."

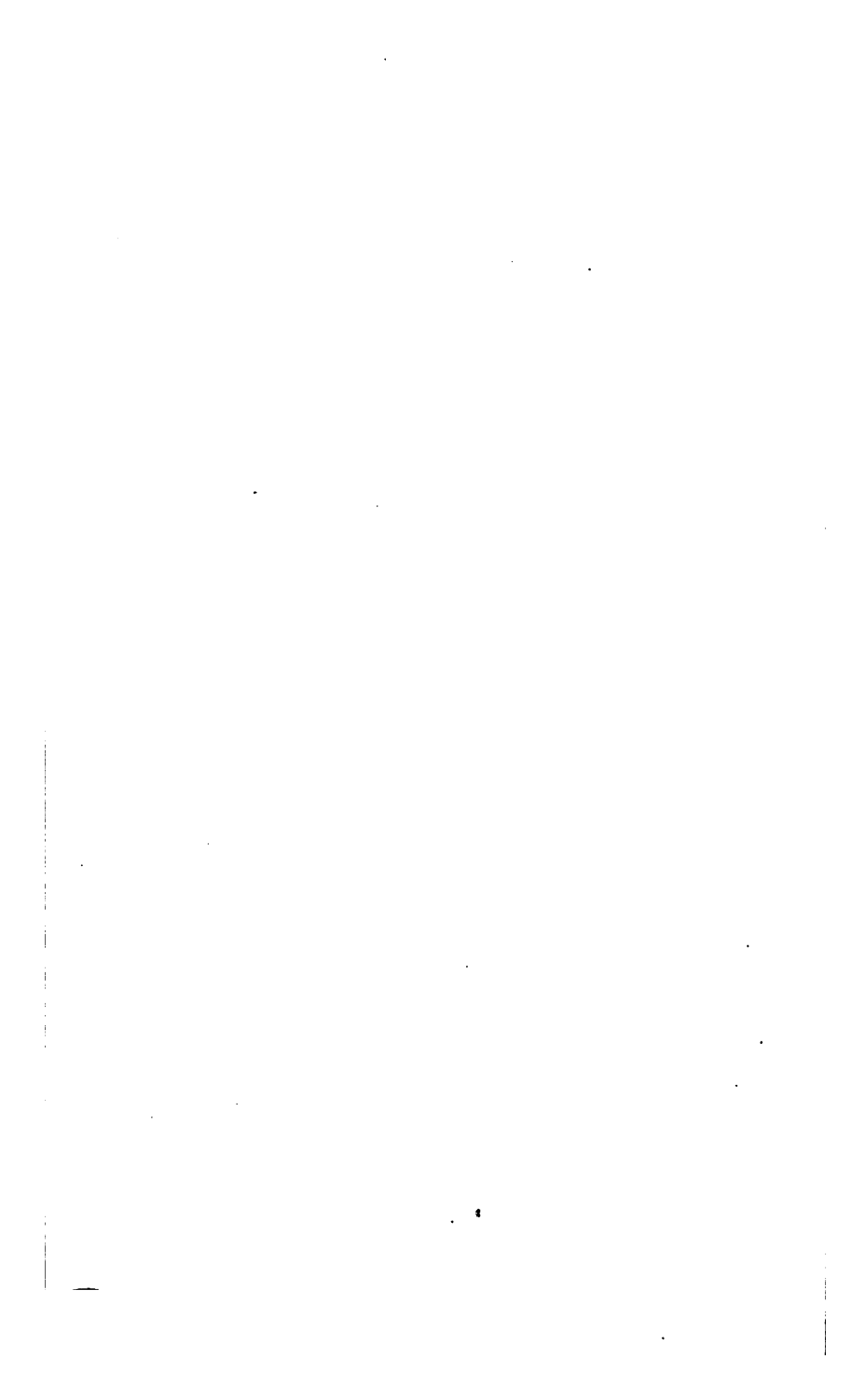
The whirling of the millstones by the giant in Artus de Bretagne resembles the "flayls" in Virgilius, sign. F. i.

The Duke of Marlborough's copy sold for 29*l.* 8*s.* June, 1810.

Q. The same as Duke of Roxburghe which sold for 60 guineas.

And to Mr. Hibbert in whose catal. No. 8400 it is erroneously called unique, and where it was sold to Thorpe for 29*l.* 18*s.* 6*d.*"

The Rev. W. D. Macray, to whom I am indebted for the transcript of these notes, informs me that the title of the volume now in the Bodleian is supplied in MS. facsimile, and noted "This is from Mr. Garrick's copy in the Museum. It is very imperfect at the end. Q. if printed by Copland?"; and further, that two ancient woodcuts, bearing the monogram (P. G.), and one marked "213. F. D. H.," representing Virgilius hanging in the basket and the sequel, are inserted at the end of the volume.



VIRGILIUS.

**THIS BOKE TREATETH OF THE LYFE OF VIRGILIUS, AND OF HIS DETH,
AND MANY MARVAYLES THAT HE DYD IN HYS LYFE TYME
BY WHYCHCRAFT AND NYGRAMANCYE THOROWGH
THE HELPE OF THE DEUYLS OF HELL.**

FROM THE EDITION BY DOESBORCKE.

THE PROLOGE.

THIS is resonable to wryght the mervelus dedes done by Virgilius within the cytie of Rome and in other places.

Rome hath be at all tymes of grete name and fame, and they that there dwell getteth greate worshyp in theyr tyme. But Romulus the emperour of Rome slewe his own broder thorough hate and enuy, notwithstandinge Remus had gyuen ouer to Romulo the cytie of Rome and all the lande therto belongynge: but Remus caryed with hym all the tresur into Champanien, and there he apon a ryuer called Vellen, he founde there a costely and ryche strong towne with hye fayre walles, that was well repayred within and withoute and with fayer ymages carued out of stone, and all the fylthe of the towne convayed vnder the erth into the riuer of Vellen that ranne therby; and this towne was in that tyme one of the fayreste, and he called it Remus after his owne proper name.

VIRGILIUS.

How Romulus cam within the fayer towne of Raynes
that he destroyed, and how he slewe his broder
Remus that was lorde of Raynes.

As Romulus harde say of his broder Remus, and of
the towne of Raynes, than he was uery heuy ; for the
walles of Raynes was so hygh that a man that stode in
the deche myght nat schote ouer well with a hande
bowe ; and the walles of Rome was so lowe that a man
myght wel lepe ouer, and with no deches.

It fortun-ed that Remus went to see his broder
Romulus at Rome, and toke with hym manye folke
after his estate and byrthe, and left his wyfe in aby-
dynge, in the towne of Raynes in Champanion with a
lytyll chylde or yonge son named Remus after his owne
name ; and whan he was com before Rome, and sawe
the walles, he sayd three tymes that the walles were to
lowe ; moreouer he sayde with a ron-ne he wolde lepe

ouer them ; and bye and bye he take a ronne and lept klene ouer. And whan his broder Romulus had harde this, howe his broder had lepte ouer, he sayd that he had done yll, and therefore he shuld lese his hed. And as Romulus dyd enter into his broders palayce, than he toke Remus, and he with his owne handes smote of his broders hed, and slew hym ; and it was nat longe tyme after that he raysed a great armye of people thorowghe all his contreye, and prepared hym towarde the towne of Raynes in Champanien, and began to set his ordinaunce towarde the walles of the towne, and dyd destroye the palayce, towers, and other places to the erthe, in so muche that he lefte but a few standynge or none : but he coulde nat fynde the wyfe of Remus, his suster, for she was fled away out of the towne, under the erthe at a false porte to hyr frendes and kynffolke, for she was one of the greatest borne women that was than there aboute. And as Romulus had destroyed the lande and towne of Raynes, he departed and went home toward the cytie of Rome with all his hooste, where he was receyued rychelye.

Howe the son of Remus, that also was named Remus after his fader, dyd slewe his unkell Romulus and afterwarde was made emperoure, and so reyned emperoure.

THAN was the wyfe of Remus very sadde and morned very sore when she knew of the dethe of hyr husbond, and also of the destructyon of the towne of Raynes

destroyed by the handes of hys brother : and she caused workemen shulde make the walles ageyne after hyr broders departyng fro it, insomuche that she made the towne of Raynes more stronger and fayrer than it was euer afore, and renewed it rychely after hyr myght and power : for she was not of so great myght as she was when her husbonde was alyue. And also this noble ladye norysshed her chylde well, and within a lytyll space he began to wexe bygge and stronge, and myghty anoughe to bere armure. Than sayde his moder to hym : " My dere son, when wyll you wreke your faders dethe that your unkele slewe ?" and he answered to his moder : " Within this iij moneythes." And forthe-with he caused his kynsffolke to reyse theyr people ; and when they were gathered they departed. He cam with a great power towarde Rome, and when he cam to Rome he entered in there at no maner of bodye ayenste sayinge. And when he was within, he made a crye that no man should do no comons harme. Than went he to the emperours palayce ; and when the Emperour knewe that he was come, he asked counsayl ; and the senyatours answered, that there was no remedy but deth ; bycause ye slewe his fader, so shall he ageyne slee you ; and with that cam in Remus into the palayce of his unkele Romulus, no body ayenst sayinge ; and there he saw his unkele afore him stand in his emperly stole ; than was he inflamed with yre and drewe out his swerde, and toke his unkele by the here, and smote of his hed ; and whan it was done, he asked the lordes

and senyatours of Rome, or they wolde thereforre warre? and they answered all, "nay:" and gaue to hym the hole empyre and crowned hym as ryght heyer; and whan he was emperour he sent for his moder and she cam to hym.

And than was Rome made with stronge walles and deches, and than gatte Rome name, and there haunted many dyuerse nacyons, and they dyd buylde and edefye many fayre dwellynge places in Rome. This Remus was a stronge man of bodye, ryche of good, wyse in counsayll, and had under hym many landes and lordshyppes.

This Remus had a knyght of his moders behalfe, that was ryght hardy and bolde in batayle, and he toke or maryed a wyfe in the cytie of Rome, that was one of the greatest senyatours dawghters of Rome and hyghest of lynage. And Remus reyned not long after, but dyed, and his sone was made emperoure and reyned after hym. And this knyght of Champanien, that had maryed the senyatours dawghter, he made great warre with hym, and dyd hym very mucche harme. This knyght had one son by his wyfe, that with great travalyng of laboure was bourne, and there was he named Virgilius of Vigilo, for by cause that he was a great space of tyme watched so with men.

Howe Virgilius was sette to schole.

As Virgilius was borne than the towne of Rome quaked and trembled: and in his youthe he was wyse

and subtyll, and was put to schole. And shortly after dyed his fader, and than Virgilius moder wolde no more marye ayen, for she loued her lord so well. And after the decease of hyr husbond hyr kynsfolke wold haue put her fro hyr enherytaunce that she had lyinge with in and with out Rome, and one of the fayreste castels and strongest in all the towne or there abowt that could be emagined or made by any man. And she complayned often to the emperoure, that was nere of kynne unto hyr husbonde : but the emperoure was a angry man and wolde nat here hyr complayntes, also he was nat beloued of the lordes nor of the comon people ; within short tyme after he deceasyd, and his sone and heyer Persydes was emperoure after his faders dethe, and ruled after his own mynde all the lande. And he had all the Romans under hym insomuche that he ruled them so strayghtly that they were sore a drad of hym.

And Virgilius was at scole at Tolenten, where he stodyed dyligently, for he was of great understandynge. Upon a tyme the scholers hadde lycence to goo to play and sporte them in the fylde after the vsaunce of the holde tyme ; and there was also Virgilius therby also walkynge amonge the hylles all about : it fortunied he spyed a great hole in the syde of a great hyll wherin he went so depe that he culde not see no more lyght, and then he went a lytell ferther therin, and than he sawe som lyght agayne, and than wente he fourth streyghte : and with in a lytyll wyle after, he harde a voice that called, " Virgilius, Virgilius ;" and he loked aboute

and he colde nat see no bodye; than Virgilius spake and asked, "Who calleth me!" than harde he the voyce agayne, but he sawe no body; than sayd he, "Virgilius, see ye not that lytyll bourde lyinge bysyde you there marked with that worde?" than answered Virgilius, "I see that borde well enough." The voyce sayd, "Doo a waye that bourd, and lette me oute ther atte." Than answered Virgilius to the voyce that was under the lytell borde, and sayd, "Who art thou that talkest me so!" Than answered the deuyll: "I am a deuyll coniured out of the body of a certeyne man, and banysshed here tyll the day of iugement, without that I be delyuered by the handes of men. Thus, Virgilius, I pray the delyuer me out of this payn, and I shall shewe unto the many bokes of nygromancy, and howe thou shalt cum by it lyghtly and knowe the practyse therein, that no man in the scyence of negromancyeshall pass the; and moreouer I shall shewe and enforme you so that thou shalt haue all thy desyre, wherby my thynke it is a great gyfte for so lytyll a doynge, for ye may also thus all your power frendys helpen, and make rythe your ennemyes unmyghty. Thorowgh that great promyse was Virgilius tempted; he badde the fynd shewe the bokes to hym that he myght haue and occupy them at his wyll. And so the fynde shewed hym, and than Virgilius pulled open a bourde, and there was a lytell hole, and therat wrange the deuyll out lyke a yeel, and cam and stode by fore Virgilius lyke a bygge man; therof Virgilius was a stoned and merueyled

greatly therof that so great a man myght come out at so lytell a hole; than sayd Virgilius, "shulde ye well passe into the hole that ye cam out of?" "Ye, I shall well," sayd the deuyll.—"I holde the beste plegge that I have, ye shall not do it." "Well," sayde the deuyll, "thereto I consente." And than the deuyll wrange hym selfe into the lytell hole ayen, and as he was there in Virgilius kyuered the hole ageyn with the bourd close, and so was the deuyll begyled, and myght not there come out ayen, but there abydeth shytted therin." Than called the deuyll dredefully to Virgilius, and sayd "What haue ye done?" Virgilius answered, "Abyde there styll to your day apoynted." And fro thensforth abydeth he there. And so Virgilius became very connyng in the practyse of the blacke scyence.

It was so that the moder of Virgilius waxed olde in so muche that she loste her herynge; than called she one of hyr seruauntes, and sayd to hym, "Ye must to Tolleten, and tell Virgilius my sone that he come and redresse his enherytaunce within and without Rome, and gryue up the schole, for he shulde be by ryght one of the greatest of all Rome." The messenger departed and wente toward Tolleten where Virgilius was, and whan he cam there, he founde Virgilius techyng and lernynge the greattest lordes of the lande, and other landes also: for I ensure ye, he was a fayr and a wyse yonge man, and connyng in the scyence of negromancy aboute all men than luyuyng. He salued Virgilius, and shewed unto hym all the mater that he cam for;

and whan Virgilius harde all the matter howe it was, he was very heuy, not for the good, but for his moder; for Virgilius had good enough; he rewarded the messenger, and also sende his moder iiij somers laden with money, and with other costely iewels, and sende hyr also one whyte horse; and so the messengre toke his leue of Virgilius, and so departed. And Virgilius abydyng styll in Tolenten emagened in his mynde howe he myght beste conuey the rest of his good to Rome and that he myght followe. And whan he ordeyned and set in order all the rest, he toke his leue and departed fro Tolenten towarde Rome, with many of his scholers with him. Whan he cam to Rome to his moder, he salewed hys moder, and she hym; for she was glad of his comynge, for she saw hym not afore by the space of xij years a fore.

Howe Virgilius dyde make his complaynt to the emperour as he was com to Rome.

As Virgilius was com to Rome he was receyued ryght worshypfullye of his power kynsfolke, and not of the ryche, for they withhelde his landes oute of his hande; for that cause was he nat welcome to them, but were angry of his comyng, for they wolde nat ete with hym nor drynke with hym. Than was Virgilius angry, and than gaue he to all his power kyndsfolke that with helde nothyng fro his moder, landes, harneyse, horses, syluer and golde and other thynges. And he gaue to his naybours great thanks for the kyndnes

that they showed to his moder in his absence; after this dyd Virgilius abyde longe tyme with hys moder, tyll the tyme that the emperour reysed a newe custom or taxe; than went all the lordes to the emperour that helde any lande of hym, and also Virgilius with all his company and many kynsfolke and frendes; and whan he cam before hym, he salewed hym, and shewed unto hym howe he was enherytred of his landes amd tene-mentes, and of those that with helde it, and desyred that he myght haue it ageyne. Than answered the Emperour, that he shulde take thereof counsayll: and forthwith he went to counsayll with them that loued not Virgilius: and they answered to the Emperour; "Me thynketh that the land is well deuyded to them that hath it, for they may helpe you in your nede; what nedeth you for to care for the dyssherytynge of one schole mayster? and byd hym take hede and loke of his schole, for he hath no ryght to any lande here aboute the citie of Rome;" and thus (they) sayd that he must take pacyence by the space of iiij. or v. yere that they myght examyne with in our selfe whether ye be ryght eyer or no. And with that answere was Virgilius very angry, and sayd that he shulde be auenged. And whan he cam home he sende for all his poor kynsfolke and fryndes and put them in his houses and dwellynge places that he hadde within Rome, and purueyed them of mete and drynke, and byd them make mery tyll Julio that the corne and frute is rype. And whan it was rype, Virgilius by his

negromancy dyde caste the ayer ouer all the frute and corne of his landes that his enemyes hylde fro hym, and caused it to be gathered and brought in to his howses, that none of his enemyes had none thereof. In this maner of wyse dyd Virgilius deseyue his enemyes of all the frute, and corne, insomuch that they had not on pennys worth of that goods that they withheld fro hym. And whan Virgilius enemyes sawe the frute so gathered, they assembled a great power, and cam towarde Virgilius to take hym and smyte of his hed ; and when they were assembled, they were so stronge, that the emperour for fere fled out of Rome, for they were xij. seniatours that had all the worlde under them ; and Virgilius had had ryght he had ben one of the xij. but they had dysherytet hym and his moder ; and when Virgilius knewe of theyr commynge, he closed all his landes with the ayer rounde about all his lande, that none lyuyng creature myght there come in to dwelle ayenst his wyll or pleasure.

Howe the emperoure of Rome beseged Virgilius beyng
in his castell.

As Virgilius enemyes cam to destroye and take hym, and when they cam before his castell, he closed theym with the ayer that they had no myght to gowe nor forwarde nor back ward, but abyde styll, where of they merueyled ; and than Virgilius answered, "Ye cum to dysheryt me, but ye shall nat ; and knowe ye well that you shall haue no profyte of the frutes as longe as I

lyue ; and ye maye tell to the emperour that I shall tarry iij. or v. yeres tyll he take counsayll. I desyne not to plete in the lawe, but I shall take my good where I fynde it ; and also tell the emperour I care nat for all his warre nor all that he can do to me." Than returned Virgilius and made ryche all his poure kynsfolke. And whan Virgilius was returned, than wente they home and knewe nat what they shoulde do ; than cam they to the emperour and complayned of Virgilius, and sayde, that Virgilius sayde, that he set nat by the emperoure and all that he coude make ; and when the emperoure harde this, he was greatly amoued and sore anangered, and sayd, that I shall brynne and set on fyer all his howses, and also I shall smyte of his hedde ; and there with all not longe taryinge, he caused his lordes and knyghtes that helde lande of hym, that they shulde reyse all theyr men of armes that they had under them, to be redy at a day at his commaundement ; and at the day apoynted the emperour and all his hooste were assembled ; they tooke theyr way towarde the place of Virgilius, that was rounde aboute well walled and closed with aeyr ; that whan the emperour cam before the walles with all his hoste, they myght not gowe nor forwarde nor backwarde. And than went fro his castell fourthe Virgilius, and with his negromancy, he made also a lyght in suche maner that they coude nat goo forwarde nor returne, but stande styll ; and he made also by his cunnyn, that the emperour thought that he was closed rounde aboute

with a great water, in so much that they myght nat come to the castell, nor for to come fro the castell, but stode styll; and thus dyd Virgilius serue the emperoure and all hys hooste: and moreouer cam Virgilius to the emperoure, and sayde, "Lorde emperoure, ye have no power with all your strength to do me harme nor my landes also; for be ryght ye shulde make of me as one of your greatest lordes and nearest of your kynred, for I at your nede maye helpe you more than al your other folke." Than answered the Emperour to Virgilius: "You begyler, may I ons get you under my handes, I wyll geue the that thow hast deserved." Than answered Virgilius, and sayd, "Lorde emperour, I fere you nat, but thynke you well, that I shall tame you well a nowghe, that ye shall be glad to know me for one of your kynsfolke and of your blode; but ye wolde dysheryte me, but ye shall not." Than caused Virgilius muche mete to be dressed by twene his howse and the hoste, that the emperour and his folke myght se it, and howe they dressed it; but they myght haue none thereof but the smoke or reke, for they of the hoste was shyt in with the aeyr as thowghe it hadde ben a great water. And so dyd Virgilius serue the emperour and his folke, nor was there no body in his hoste that coude fynde any remedy to helpe them there agayn.

Upon a tyme as they were in that thraldome afore the castell, there cam a man that colde skylle in the scyence of negromancy, and cam afore the emperoure, and sayd, that he wolde by hys practyce make slepe all

Virgilius folke; and so he dyd, in so muche that Virgilius his selfe myght scant with drawe hym fro slepyng; than was he sorye and wyste nat what to do, for the emperours folke was delyuered, and began to come upon Virgilius walles; And whan Virgilius saw that, he loked in his boke of negromancye where in he was very parfeyte, and there he founde in what maner he myght delyuer his folke fro slepe; and than he cungered that he made the emperoure stand styll agene, that he myght nat remeue out of his place, nor all his folke, nor the mayster of negromancy myght nat remeue nor styrrer, as thowgh they were deed: and they that were upon the ladders, one fote uppe, another downe, and so stode styll, and also some stode with one foot on the lader, and a nother upon the wall, and so for to stand styll till it pleased Virgilius. Whereof the emperour was sore auexed and angery, and asked his mayster if they shulde stande styll in that maner? and he gaue hym no answer, but he spake to Virgilius and sayd that he wulde showe upon hym his cunnyng. And than Virgilius answered, and bad hym do his beste, for I set nat a strawe by you nor all that you can do to me. And thus helde Virgilius the emperour and all his folke closed in this maner with the ayer, by space of a day. And in the nyght came Virgilius to the emperour, and sayd; "It is a shame for so noble a prynce thus to stop the way, and take upon hym that he can nat do."

Than sayd the emperour to Virgilius: "Helpe me oute of this daunger, and I shall restore ageyne to you

all your landes and tenementes, and haue all thynges at your owne wyll." Than answered Virgilius to the emperour, "I wyll delyuer you out of this daunger so that ye wyll gyue me grace." "Ye, by my crowne, and I knowe you for on of my kynred and I dessyre to haue you with me in my felawshyp." And than Virgilius put a waye the closynge, and reseyued the emperour and all his folke into his castell, where golde and ryches were plenty, and serued them with mete and drynke ryght plentifully, after theyr degre, of the deyntiest and strangest that myght be gotte, that they sawe neuer afore. And the emperour was there more rychely serued than euer he was before or after. And Virgilius rewarded euery persone after his degree, and with manye costely and meruelouse gyftes.

Howe the Emperour restored ageyne unto Virgilius all his enherytaunce and gooddes, and gaue to hym many other thynges.

THAN toke they leue of Virgilius and retourned home ageyne; and whan they were returned home the emperour gaue to Virgilius his land ageyn and all that he asked, and (he) was the greatest lord of the emperours counsayll. After that it hapenyd that Virgilius was enamoured of a fayre ladye, the fayrest in all Rome. Virgilius made a craft in egromancy that tolde hir all his mynde: when the ladye knewe his mynde, she thowght in hyr selfe to deseyue hym, and sayde, if he

wyll come at mydnyght to the castell walle ; she shulde lette downe a basket with stronge cordes, and there to drawe hym vppe at hyr wyndowe, and so to lye by hyr, and haue his pleasur ; and with this answere was Virgilius very glad with that answer, and sayd, he shulde doo it with a good wyll.

Howe the gentyl woman pulled vppe Virgilius, and howe she let hym hange in the basket when he was halfe way vp to hyr wyndowe, and howe the people wondered and mocked hym.

A DAY was set that Virgilius sholde come to a tower that stode in the market place of Rome, and in all the towne was none so hygh ; and at the day apoynted Virgilius cam to the tower, and the gentyl woman was therat waytynge, and as she sawe hym there stande, she let downe the basket at the wyndowe ; and when it was done Virgilius went in, and whan he was therein, she pulled hym up tyll that he cam halfe waye, and there she let him hange, and made the corde faste. Than the gentylwoman spake ; “ Ye be deceyued, and I shall let you hange tyll to morowe, for it is market day, that all the folke may wonder of you and of your dyshonestie that you wolde haue do, and lye by me ; and therewithall she shyt her wyndowe, and let hym hange tyll the mornynge that it was daye, tyll all the men in Rome wyst it, and also the emperour that was ashamed, and sent for the gentylwoman, and bad hyr let hym downe,

and so she dyd; and whan he was downe, he was ashamed, and sayd, that shortly after he wolde be auenged on hyr; and so went home to his gardayne that was the fayrest that stode within Rome. Than toke he his bokes, and by his connynge put out all the fyer that was in Rome, and none of them without myght bryng in fyer into the cytie; and this dured by the space of a daye and a nyght; but Virgilius had anowghe, and no body els had, nor myght not make no fyer within Rome.

How Virgilius put out all the fyer of Rome.

THE emperoure and all his barons and the comons of Rome merveyled that there was no fyer in al the cytie, and than they thought in theyr myndes that Virgilius had put it out. Than the emperour sent for Virgilius, and prayd hym of his counsayll that men myght haue fyer ageyne. Than ye must cause a scaffold to be made in the mydle of the market-place, and than ye muste set the gentylwoman in hyr smocke that hynged me in the basket yesterday; and than lett make a crye thorowgh all the cytie of Rome, who so wyll haue ony fyer must come to the scaffold in the market-place, and there betwene the legges of the gentylwoman there, they shuld haue fyer, or otherwyse none: and knowe that one the other can gyue none, nor sell none; and thus ye must do if ye wyll haue ony fyer. When they harde this, they cam with great multytude to the scaffold.

Howe the gentylwoman was put upon the scaffold, and howe the folke of the towne went and fetched fyer at hyr tayle, and also lyght candels betwene hyr legges.

THE emperoure and all his lordes sawe that there was no other remedye but they muste nedes do after Virgilius counsayll: he dyd cause a scaffold to be made in the marked place, and caused the gentyll woman to be set there on in hyr smocke; and there men fetch fyer betwene hyr legges; the pore men with candels and strawe, and the ryche men lyghted they theyr torches. Thre dayes must the gentylwoman stande in that manere or els they shulde haue no fyer. And after the thyrde day went the gentylwoman home sore ashamed, for she knewe well that Virgilius had done that violence to hyr.

Within a whyle after maryed Virgilius a wyfe: and when that was done, Virgilius made a merueylous paleyce with iiij corners: and as it was made, he layed the emperoure therin in one of the corners, and herde all that the men dyd say in that quarter. And in lykewise dyd he bryng hym in the other iij quarters, and so he harde what they sayde in the other quarters of Rome, and thus gowyng by the iiij quarters harde he what they sayde thorowe all Rome; the myght nat speke so secretly but he harde it.

Howe Virgilius made saluatio Rome.

The emperour asked of Virgilius howe that he myght

make Rome prospere and haue many landes under them, and knowe when any lande wolde ryse agen theym ; and Virgilius sayd to the emperoure, " I woll within short space that do." And he made vpon the Capitolum, that was the towne house, made with caruede ymages, and of stone, and that he let call Saluacio Rome ; that is to say, this is the Saluacyon of the cytie of Rome ; and he made in the compase all the goddes that we call mamettes and ydolles, that were under the subiection of Rome ; and euery of the goddes that there were had in his hande a bell ; and in the mydle of the godes made he one god of Rome. And when so euer that there was any lande wolde make ony warre ageynst Rome, than wolde the godes tourne theyr backes towarde the god of Rome ; and than the god of the lande that wolde stande up ageyne Rome clynked his bell solonge that he hathe in his hand, tyll the senatours of Rome hereth it, and forthwith they go there and see what lande it is that wyll warre a gaynst them ; and so they prepare them, and goeth a geyne them and subdueth theym. This forsayde token knewe the men of Carthago, that was sore a greued for the great harme that the Romans had done them. And they toke a pryuy counseyll in what manner they myght destroy that worke. Than thought they in there mynde to sende iij men out and gaue them great multytude of golde and syluer ; and these iij men toke theyr leue of the lordes and went towarde the cytie of Rome, and when they were come to Rome they reported themselfe

sothesayers and trewe dremers. Vpon a tyme wente these iij men to a hyll that was within the cytie, and there they buryed a great potte of money very depe in the erthe, and when that was done and kyuered ageyne, they went to the brygge of Tyber and let fall in a certayne place a great barell with golden pens; and when this was done these thre men went to the seniatours of Rome, and sayd; "Worshypfull lordes, we haue this nyght edremed, that with in the fote of a hyll here with in Rome is a great pot with money; wyll ye lordes graunt to us, and we shall do the coste to seke there after?" and the lordes consented and than they toke laberours and delued the money out of the erthe. And when it was done, they went a nother tyme to the lordes, and sayde; "Worshypful lordes we haue also dremed that in a certeyne place of Tyber lyeth a barell full of golden pens; if that you wyll graunte to us that we shall go seke it;" and the lordes of Rome thynkyng no dyscepte, graunted to those sothesayers, and badde them do that that they shulde do there best. And than the sothe sayers was glad. And than the hyred shyppes and men, and went toward the place where it was; and when they were come they sowght in everye place there about, and at the laste founde the barellfull of golden pens, whereof they were glade; and than they gaue to the lordes costely gyftes. And than to come to theyr purpose, they cam to the lordes a geyne, and sayde to them: "Worshypfull lordes, we haue dremed a geyne that under the foundacyon of Capitoliū, there

where Saluatio Rome standeth, be xij barelles full of golde; and pleasyeth you lordes that you wolde graunt us lycence, it shall be to your great auantage;" and the lordes styrred with couytayse graunted them, bycause ij tymes a fore they told trewe; whereof they were glad, and gatte laberours, and began to dygge under the fundacyon of Saluatio Rome: and when they thought that they had dygged a noughe they departed fro Rome, and the next daye folowyng fell that house downe, and all the worke that Virgilius had made; and so the lordes knewe that the were deseyued, and were sorowfull, and after that hade nat no fortune as they had a fore tymes.

Howe the emperour asked counsayll of Virgilius howe the nyght ronners and yll doers myght be ryd out of the stretes.

THE emperour had manye complayntes of the nyght ronners and theues, and also of great murderynge of people in the nyght, in so muche that the emperour asked counsayll of Virgilius, and sayd: "That he hath great complayntes of the theues that ronnyth by nyght for they kyll many men; what counsayll Virgilius is best to be done?" Than answered Virgilius to the emperour, "Ye shall let make a horse of coper, and a coper man apon his backe, hauynge in his handes a flayll of yron, and that horse, ye shall do brynge a fore the towne howse, and then ye shall lett crye that a man fro henseforth at x. of the clocke shulde ryng a bell,

and he that after the bell was ronge in the strete shulde be slayne, no worke thereof be done." And whan this crye was made the roffians set nat a poynt, but kept the stretes as they dyd a fore, and wolde nat let therfore; and as sone as the bell was ronge at x. of the clocke, than lept the horse of coper with the coper man thorowgh the stretes of Rome, insomuche that he lefte nat one strete in Rome unsowght; and as sone as he found any man or woman in the strete he slewe them starke deed, insomuche that he slewe a boue CC. persones or more. And this seying, the theues and nyght ronners howe they myght fynde a remedy therefore thought in theyr myndes to make a dragge with a ladder theron; and as they wolde gowe out be nyght they toke theyr ladders with them, and when they harde the horse come, than caste they the dragge upon the howses, and so went up a pon theyr ladders to the top of the howses, so that the coper man myght nat toche them; and so a byd they styll in theyr wycked doying. Than came they a gene to the emperoure and complayned, and than the emperoure asked counsayll of Virgilius; and Virgilius answered and sayd, "that he muste get to coper houndes and set them of eyther syde of the coper horse, and let crye a geyne that no body after the bell is ronge shulde departe oute of theyr howse that wolde lyue." But the nyght walkers carede not a poynt for that crye; but when they harde the horse comynge, with theyr ladders clymed upon the howse, but the dogges lept after, and tered them all to peces; and thus

the noyse went thorowgh Rome, in so muche that nobody durst in the nyght go in the strete, and thus all the nyght walkers were destroyed.

Howe Virgilius made a lampe that at all tymes brenned. For profeyte of the comon people, Virgilius on a great myghty marbell pyller, dyd make a brygge that cam vp to the paleyce, and so went Virgilius well vp the pyller oute of the paleyce; that paleyce and the pyller stode in the mydde of Rome; and vpon this pyller made he a lampe of glasse that allwaye byrned without gowyng out, and no body myght put it out; and this lampe lyghtened ouer all the cytie of Rome fro the one corner to the other, and there was nat so lytell a strete but it gaue suche lyght that semed ij torches there had stande; and vpon the walles of the palayce made he a metall man that helde in his hande a metall bowe that poynted euer upon the lampe for to shote it out; but alway burned the lampe and gaue lyght ouer all Rome. And vpon a tyme went the burgeyses daughters to play in the paleyse and beheld the metall man; and one of them asked in sporte, why he shat nat? and than she cam to the man and with hyr hande toched the bowe, and than the bolte flew oute, and brake the lampe that Virgilius made; and it was wonder that the mayden went nat out of her mynde for the great fere she had, and also the other burgeyses daughters that were in hyr companye, of the great stroke that it gaue when it hyt the lampe, and when they sawe the metall man so

swyftly ronne his waye: and neuer after was he no more sene; and this forsayd lampe was abydyng byrnyng after the deth of Virgilius by the space of C.C.C. yeres or more.

How Virgilius made a orcharde by the fountayne, the fayrest and goodlyest that euer culde be founde in all the worlde.

GREAT wonder dyd Virgilius in his tyme; for after that palayce he made an horcharde wherin he set all maner of trees berynge frute, and also many herbes growyng in that yarde. And as the tyme was, sawe men dayly, rype frute, fayre blossoms, full plentyous. In the myddell of the orcharde was a fayer clere fountayne, the fayrest that euer was sene; and in this orchard was many dyuers of byrdes syngyng, for they myght well cum in, but the culde no more flye out ageyne, for it was closed in suche with the ayer; and men harde also theyr byrdes syng that was within, and culde not goo forth. Also he had in his orcharde all maner of tame bestes that were profitable for men: also he made of the water that ran out of the fountayn a standyng water about the trees, the clereest that myght be, and there in was of all maner of fysshe that culde be thought. Also in this orcharde all maner of joyfulnes, both of trees, herbes, fowles, and bestes thereof that men myght thynke, or be immagened by mannes reasons. Also he dyd make greater thynges than all this; for he made a vaute or seller in the

orcharde, the fayreste that myght be made or thought by mannes reason, whiche seller he made for to put in his money and ryches that he had ; for he was so ryche, and so great multitude that he knewe no ende ; and he set ij metall men before the dore to kepe it, and in eche hande a great hamer, and therwith they smyte vpon a anuilde, one after the other, insomuche that the byrdes that flye ouer hereth it, and by and bye falleth there down deed ; and otherwyse had Virgilius not his good kepte.

Howe Virgilius made his wyfe a ymage.

A IMAGE made Virgilius a hye in the ayer that myght nat fall ; and the people of Rome myght nat open noder wyndowe nor doer but they must nedes see it. And this image had this properte, that no woman after she had seen the image had no luste to do bodely lust ; and therefore the women had great enuy, and they compleyned theym to Virgilius' wyfe that they theyr sporte and dalyinge had loste and prayed hyr that she wolde destroy that image and make it fall. And than wayted Virgilius' wyfe hir tyme, and went vp the brygge of the ayer and cast downe the image ; and than dyd the women theyr wyl. And when Virgilius cam and founde his image downe, he was very angry, and sayd to his selfe, that it shulde nat auayll them, for he wolde set it up ageyne ; and swore that he shulde know who had cast it downe ; and he set it ageyne, and asked his ladye, and she had caste downe it? and she

sayd, "Naye." And than cam the women ageyne to Virgilius' wyfe, and sayd, "That it was worse than it was before, and prayed hyr, that she shulde caste it downe ageyne;" and than Virgilius went pryuyley into a corner, and wayted his wyfe, for he had sene before howe the women had complayned them to hyr. And than went Virgilius' wyfe and caste downe the image; and Virgilius that had hyd hym, and sawe howe his wyfe had caste it downe, and with a anger wold haue cast her after with the ymage; and he sayd, "The deuyll satysfye you, for I dyd it for the beste; but I shall neuer more medyll, but I shall let the women do theyr wyll;" and fro thenseforthe began Virgilius to hate his wyfe.

Howe Virgilius had his pleasure with the Sodans daughter.

OFTEN tymes herde Virgilius tell of the fayrnes of the Sodans dawghter, insomuche that he was enamoured of hyr, thoughe he neuer sawe hyr; than by his connyng made he a brygge in the ayer, and went ouer to hyr, and when he had spoke with hyr, and showed hyr his mynde, than she consented to hym, notwithstanding she neuer sawe hym afore. And she sayde on a nyghte that she wolde departe with hym into his countre, and knowe what maner a man he were, and what dwellyng he had. Than answered Virgilius, and sayde to hyr; "What wyll I doo: but ye shall passe ouer many landes, and you shall not trede in them."

Than caryed he hyr ouer into his owne lande, ouer the brygge that he had made in the ayer, and so browght hyr to Rome ; and when he was at home, he asked hyr " If she sawe no body ? " . and she said, " No, but hym alone. " And thanne showed Virgilius to hyr hys palayce and orchard, and the metall men that stode styll a pece smytynge : and he shewed to hyr also all his treasur, and he presented it to hyr ; and she wolde nat reseyue it, sayinge, " That she had to muche of hyr faders to kepe. " And Virgilius helde her in his orcherde as longe as it please hym. And as the Soudan founde nat is dawghter he was sorofull, for because he woste nat where she was become ; and they sowght all about, but in no place culde they fynde hyr.

Howe Virgilius brought agene the Sodans daughter into hyr faders lande, and howe he founde hyr slepynge vpon hyr bedde.

WHEN the Sodans dawghter had byd longe with Virgilius in his orcharde, than desyred she to goo home to hyr faders lande. And than toke Virgilius the Sodans dawghter in his hannes, and caste hyr vpon the brygge in the ayer, and he his selfe brought hyr to hyr faders palayce, and put hyr in hyr chamber vpon hyr bed ; and than he betoke hyr to the goddes, and so returned he home to his place towarde Rome. And in the begynnynge of the day arose the Sodan that was sore vexed for the lesynge of his dawghter ; and than cam one of hyr chamberlaynes to the emperoure, and

tolde hym howe his dawghter was come ageyne, and lay vpon hyr bed and slepte. Than cam he to hyr hastely and asked hyr where she had bene, and howe she was come there ageyne? "Fader," sayd she, "there was a fayre man of a straunge land, and he brought me thorowgh the ayer to his paleyce and orcharde; but I haue nat spoke to man nor woman but to hym alone, and I knowe nat what lande it is." The Sodan answered and sayde to hyr, "That she shulde brynge some of the frute of that cuntrey with hyr:" and shesaydeshe wolde. And within a wyle cam Virgilius to Babylone, and toke the Sodans daughter with hym ageyne, and so departed ageyne to his cuntrey with hyr, and kepte hir longe as pleased hym; and when she departed ageyne she toke with hir walnottes and other frute. And when she was come home she shewed hyr father the walnuttes and other frutes of the lande. "Ha, ha," sayde he, "it is on the syde of France that so often (he) hath borne you away."

Howe Virgilius was taken there.

THE Sodan cam upon a tyme to his dawter and sayde; "My daughter, when he commethe agene to you that was wonte to careye you awaye, gyue to hym this drynke that I shall gyue to you or he slepe with you, but drynke ye none thereof, I warne you: for when he hath drunkyn thereof he shall slepe, and when he is a slepe let me know therof: than shall we take hym, and know fro whens he is." And the lady dyd as she

was commaunded. And whan Virgilius was com, she gaue hym to drynke of the drynke that hir fader gaue hyr : and when he had drunke, he slepte, and so was taken. Than was Virgilius brought to the Sodan, and the lordes, and also the dawter of the Sodan. And than the Sodan showed his knyghtes that that was the man that had stolen his dawghter away : and than he sayd to Virgilius : " Ye be welcome, for your pleasure that ye haue had, ye shall suffer dethe." Than answered Virgilius to the Sodan : " I wolde that I had neuer sene hir, and if that ye wyll let me gowe I shall neuer come ageyne." than answered the Sodan and the lordes : " That shall we nat do ; but for youre myssedede ye shall suffer a shamefull dethe." Than answered the Sodans dawghter, " Yf ye put hym to deth I shall suffer deth with hym." Than answered the Sodan : " Therto I consente, for ye shall be burned with hym." Than answered Virgilius, " That shall you nat do with all the strength and myght that ye can do, thoughe ye be of so great power."

Howe Virgilius cam out and led with hym the fayer lady the Sodans daughter, and how he founded the towne of Naples.

WHAN Virgilius harde of this, he made with his cunnynge than the Sodan and all his lordes (thynk) that the great ryuer of Babylon was in the myddell among them ranne, and that they swemed, and laye, and spronge lyke duckes, and thus toke Virgilius with

hym the fayre lady upon the brygge in the ayer. And when they were bothe upon the brygge, he delyuered the Sodan fro the ryuere and all the lordes, and than they sawe Virgilius caray awaye his dawghter ouer the see upon a brygge in the ayer, wher of he merueyled and was very sorye, and wyste nat what to do, for he culde nat remedy it. And in this maner dyd he conuey the Sodans dawghter ouer the see to Rome. And Virgilius was sore enamored of that lady. Than he thought in hys mynde, howe he myght mareye hyr, and thoughte in his mynde to founde in the myddes of the see a fayer towne with great landes belongyng to it : and so he dyd by his cunnynge, and called it Napells, and the fundacyon of it was of egges ; and in that towne of Napells he made a tower with iiij corners, and in the toppe he set a napyll upon a yron yarde, and no man culde pull away that apell without he brake it : and thorowghe that yron set he a botel, and on that botel set he a egge ; and he henge the apell by the stauke upon a cheyne, and so hangyth it styll. And whenne the egge styrreth so shulde the towne of Napels quake, and whan the egge brake than shulde the towne synke. When he had made an ende he lette call it Napels. And in this towne he layde a part of his treasur that he had, therin : and also set therin his louer, the fayer lady the Sodans dawghter : and he gaue to her the towne of Napels and all the landes therto belongynge, to hir use and hyr chyl dren. And within short whyle after, he maryed her to a sertayne lorde or knyght of Spayn.

Within shorte wyle after, it fortun'd that the emperor had a great fantasy to the towne of Napells, for it bare the name in the tyme for one of the fayrest in the world: and it lay also in the fayrest market place aboute Rome. Than secretly sende the emperor letters to all his lordes that were under hym, that they shoulde, as shortely as they myght, rayse theyr folke, and to come to Rome for to besege the towne of Napels; and so they dyd, insomuche that they assembled a great companye, and wente towarde the towne of Napels and destroyed all afore hym. And when he was come to Napels he beseiged it. And the knyght that maryed the lady that was within Napels defended the towne nobely ageynste the emperoure and all his hoste. And in the meane wyle sente this knyght a messengere to Virgilius, whiche tolde hym all howe the emperor beseiged the towne of Napels: wherwith Virgilius was angry, and sent worde that the knyght shulde nat set be hym nat all his hoste, for I shall prouyde well a nough for you: and so departed the messenger to Napels.

Howe the emperor beseiged the towne of Napels.

AND when Virgilius knewe that the emperor beseiged Napels, than made he all the fresshe water to be lyke rayne, in suche maner that the emperours folke had neuer a drop of water and they of Napels had a noughe; and in the meane season reysed Virgilius his hoste, and cam towarde the emperoure to Napels. But the empe-

roure myght no lenger taray, for the horse and men dyed for faute of water, and so he loste a great parte of theym. Than the emperoure seynge this, departed home ageyn to the cytie of Rome, all eschamed and dyscumfyt; and as he returned homewarde, in the waye, he met with Virgilius comynge with all his compayne towarde Napels. And when Virgilius sawe the emperoure, he cam to hym, and salued hym in this manere: "O noble emperoure, howe fortunèd this to you, that be so nooble a prynce as you be, to gyue up the seage of Napels, and to returne home agene to the cytie of Rome, all dyscumfit, without doynge any harme at all so schortly?" than wyste the emperoure well that Virgilius mocked hym, and he was therewith very angry. And than went Virgilius to Napels, and he caused the lordes of the towne to make a othe that they shulde beyre no Romans within the forsayde towne.

Howe Virgilius dyd strengthe the towne of Napels
with scholers and merchauntes.

As Virgilius had reseyuèd the othes of the lordes of Napels than returned he ageyne to Rome, and feched his bokes and other mouable goodes, and browght it to Napels, and let his good a lone that he had shet in the seller. And his dwellynge he gaue to his frendes to kepe, and his dwellynge places, and so departed to Napels; there he made a schole and gaue therto much landes, that euery scholer a bydyng and gowyng to schole had lande to lyue on of the towne; and they that

gaue vp the schole, they loste the lande : and there cam many fro Tuletten to schole. And when he had ordeyned the towne well with scholers, and than made he a warme bath that euery man myght bathe hym in that wolde ; and that bathe is there to this tyme, and it was the fyrste bathe that euer was. And after this made he a brygge the fayrest that euer man sawe, and there myght men se all maner of fayer shyppes that belonged to merchaunsedyse, and all other thynges of the see. And the towne in those days was the fayrest and noblest in all the worlde. And in this schole aforesayde dyde Virgilius rede the great conynges and scyaunce of egromancy, for he was the conyngest that euer was a fore, or after, in that scyence. And within schorte space his wyfe dyed, and she had neuer no chyldren by hym. And moreouer aboue all men he loued scholers, and gaue muche moneye to bye bokes with all, and thus he ruled them ryght nobely, for he myght do it ryght well, for he was one of the greatest borne men of all the world, and had beene the greateste lorde of all Rome.

Howe Virgilius made in Rome a metall serpente.

THAN made Virgilius at Rome a metall serpente with his cunnyng, that who so euer put his hande in the throte of the serpente, was to swere his cause ryght and trewe ; and if hys cause were false he shulde nat plucke his hande out a geyne : and if it were trewe they shulde plucke it out a geyne without any harme doynge.

So it fortunèd that there was a knyght of Lumbardy that mystrusted his wyfe with one of his men that was moost set by in the conseyte of his wyfe: but she excused hyr selfe ryght noblye and wysely. And she consented to goo with hym to Rome to that serpent, and there to take hyr othe that she was not gylty of that, that he put apon hyr. And therto consented the knyght: and as they were bothe in the carte, and also hyr man with hyr, she sayd to the man; that when he cam to Rome, that he shulde clothe hym with a foles-cote, and dysgyse hym in suche maner that they shulde nat knowe hym, and so dyd he; and when the day was come that he shulde come to the serpent, he was there present. And Virgilius knowinge the falsenes of the woman by his cunnynge of egromancy, and than sayd Virgilius to the woman: "With drawe your othe and swere nat;" but she wolde nat do after hym, but put hyr hande into the serpent's mouthe: and when hyr hande was in, she sware before hyr husbände that she had no more to do with hym than with that fole, that stode hyr by: and by cause that she sayd trowthe she pulled out hyr hande a geyne out of the throte of the serpent nat hurt; and than departed the knyght home and trusted hyr well euer after. And Virgilius hauyng therat great spyte and anger that the woman hade so escaped, destroyed the serpent: for thus scaped the lady a waye fro that great daunger. And than spake Virgilius, and sayde: that the women be

ryght wyse to enmagen ungracyousenes, but in goodness they be but innocentes.

Howe Virgilius dyed.

THUS as Virgilius in his life had done many maruylous and sotyll thynges, and also had promysed to the emperour many other dyuerse thynges and meruylouse : for he promysed to make the trees and spyces to bere frute thre tymes in a yere : and euery tree shulde haue rype frute and also blossomes at one tyme thereon growynge : also he shulde maken the shyppes for to sayle a geynste the streme as with the streme at all tymes ; and he wolde haue made the peny to be as lyghtely gat as spente : and the women shulde be delyuered of theyr chylderne with out in any maner felynge anye payne at all. And these thynges afore sayde promysed Virgilius to the emperour for to do, and many other dyuerse thynges that were to longe for to rehearse here, if that it fortuneth hym nat to dye in the mene wyle.

And after this made Virgilius a goodly castell that hadde but one goynge in therto, and no man myght nat enter in therto, but at the one gate, or els nat. And also aboute the same castell flowed there a water and it was unpossyble for any man there to haue anye enterynge. And this castell stode without the cytie of Rome and this enteringe of this gate was made with xxiiij yron flayles, and on euery syde was there xij men on eche syde, styll a pece smytynge with the flayles

neuer seasynge, the oon after the other ; and no man myght cum in without the flayles stode styll but he was slayne. And these flayles was made with such a gyn that Virgilius stopped them when he lyst to enter in therat, but no man els culde fynde the way. And in this castell put Virgilius parte of his treasure ther in pruyly ; and when this was done he imagyned in his mynde by what meane he myght make his selfe yonge ageyn, bycause he thought to lyve longer many yeres, to do manye wonders and merueylouse thynges. And vpon a tyme went Virgilius to the emperoure, and asked hym, of lycence by the space of iij wekes. But the emperours in no wyse wolde graunte unto hym, for he wolde haue Virgilius at all tymes by hym. Than harde he that Virgilius went to his house and toke with hym one of his men that he aboue all men trusted, and knewe well that he wolde best kepe his counsayll ; and they departed to his castell that was without the towne, and when they were afore the castell there sawe the man men stande with yron flayles in theyr handes sore smytynge. Than sayd Virgilius to his man : "Enter you fyrste into the castell ;" than answered the man and sayd " If I shulde enter the flayles wolde slee me." Than shewed Virgilius to the man of eche syde the enterynge in and all the vyces that therto belonged ; and when he had shewed hym all the wayes, he made sease the flayles and went into the castell : and when they were bothe in, Virgilius turned the vyces ageyne, and so went the yron flayles as they dyd a fore. Then sayde Virgilius, " My dere beloued

frende, and he that I above all men truste, and knowe moost of my secret :” and than led he the man into the seller where he had made a fayer lampe at all seasons burnynge. And than sayd Virgilius to the man : “ Se you the barell that standeth here ?” and he sayde, “ ye there muste put me : fyrste ye muste slee me, and hewe smalle to peces, and cut my head in iiij peces, and salte the heed under in the bottum, and then the peces there after, and my herte in the myddel, and then set the barell under the lampe, that nyght and daye therin may droppe and leke : and ye shall ix dayes longe, ones in the daye fyll the lampe, and fayle nat. And when this is all done, than shall I be renued and made yonge ageyn and lyue longe tyme and maney wynters mo, if that it fortune me nat to be taken of a boue and dye.” And when the man harde his master Virgilius spekethus, he was sore abasshed, and sayd : “ That wyll I neuer whyle I lyue, for in no maner wyll I slee you.” And than sayd Virgilius : “ Ye at this tyme must do it, for it shall be no grefe unto you.” And at the last Virgilius treated his man so muche, that he consented to hym : and then toke the seruant Virgilius, and slewe hym, and when he was thus slayn, he hewe hym in peces and salted hym in the barell, and cut his heed in iiij. peces as his master bad hym, and than put the herte in the myddell and salted them wele : and when all this was done, he hynge the lampe ryght ouer the barell, that it myght at all times droppe in therto. And when he had done all this, he went out of the castell and turned the

vyces, and then wente the copper men smyghtynge with theyr flayles so strongly upon the yron anueldes as they dyd afore, that there durste no man enter : and he came euery daye to the castell and fylled the lampe, as Virgilius had bad hym.

And as the emperour myssed Virgilius by the space of seuen dayes, he merueyled greatly where he shulde be by come; but Virgilius was kylled and layed in the seller by his seruaunte that he loued so well. And than the emperour thought in his mynde to aske Virgilius seruaunt, where Virgilius his master was: and so he dyd, for he knewe well that Virgilius loued hym above all men in the worlde. Than answered the seruaunte to the emperoure, and sayde, " Worschypfull lorde, and it please your grace I wot nat where he is, for it is seuen dayes past that I sawe hym laste; and than wente he forthe I cannot tell whyther, for he wulde nat let me goo with hym." Than was the emperoure angry with that answer, and sayd : "Thou lyeest falce thefe that thou art; but without thou showe me shortly where he is, I shall put the to dethe." With those wordes was the man abashed, and sayde: "Worshypfull lorde, seuen dayes a goo I went with hym without the towne to the castell, and there he went in, and there I lefte hym, for he wold nat let me in with hym." Than sayd the emperour, "goo with me to the same castell," and so he dyd; and whan they cam a fore the castell and wolde haue entered, they myght nat, bycause flayles smyt so faste. Than sayde the emperoure : " Make pease this

flayles, that we may cum in." Than answered the man: "I knowe nat the way:" than sayd the emperour, "Than shalt thou dye;" and than thorowgh the fere of dethe he turned the vyce and made the flayles stande styl, and then the emperoure entered into the castell with all his folke, and soughte al a boutte in euery corner after Virgilius; and at the laste they sowght so longe that they cam into the seller where they sawe the lampe hang ouer the barell, where Virgilius lay in deed. Than asked the emperoure the man: "Who had made hym so herdey to put his mayster Virgilius so to dethe?" and the man answered no worde to the emperoure. And than the emperour, with great anger, drewe out his swerde, and slewe he there Virgilius man. And when all this was done, than sawe the emperoure and all his folke a naked chylde, iij. tymes rennyng a boutte the barell, saynge the wordes: "cursed be the tyme that ye cam euer here:" and with those wordes vanyshe the chylde away, and was neuer sene a geyne: and thus abyde Virgilius in the barell, deed. Then was the emperour very heuy for the dethe of Virgilius, and also all Virgilius kynred, and also all the scholers that dwelled aboute the towne of Napels, and in especyall the towne of Napels, for by cause that Virgilius was the founder therof, and made it of great worshypp. Than thought the emperoure to haue the good and ryches of Virgilius, but there were none so harday that durste cum in to fetche it, for fere of the copper men, that smote so faste with theyr yron flayles: and so abyde Virgilius treasure in

the seller. And Virgilius dyd many other merueylouse thynges that in this boke is not wryten. And thus (God) gyue us grace that we may be in the boke of euer lastyng blysse. Amen.

Thus endethe the lyfe of Virgilius
with many dyuers consaytes that
he dyd. Emprynted in the cy-
tie of Anwarpe By me
Johnn Doesborcke
dwellynge at
the camer
porte.

APPENDIX.

DE CARNE IMPUTRESCIBILI MACELLI.

JAM nunc ad civitatem Campaniæ Neapolin redeamus, in qua macellum est, in cujus pariete insertum perhibetur à Virgilio frustrum carnis tantæ efficacisë, quod, dum illic erit inclusum in ipsius macelli continentia, nulla caro quanto tempore vetustas nares olefacientis aut intuentis adspectum aut comedentis saporem offendet. Est in eadem civitate porta Dominica Nolam, Campaniæ civitatem olim inclutam, respiciens, in cujus ingressu est via lapidibus artificiosè constructa. Sub hujus viæ sigillo conclusit Virgilius omne genus reptilis nocui, undè provenit, quod, cum civitas illa, in ambitu plurimùm spatiosa, tota columnis subterrenis innitatur, nusquam in cavernis aut rimis interioribus, aut hortis infra urbis mœnia conclusis vermis nocivus reperitur. Tertium est quod illic expertus sum, tunc quidem ipsius ignarus; sed fortuito casu reapse mihi dante scientiam et probationem, coactus sum esse sciens ejus, quod si non preventus essem periculo, vix aliena relatione fieri posse assererem. Nempe anno, quo fuit Acon obsessa, circa eminens S. Johannis Baptistæ festum cum essem Salerni, de subito supervenit mihi hospes jucundus, cujus sincera dilectio cum diutina in scholis et curia domini mei Regis vetustioris Angliæ, Henrici avi vestri, serenissime Princeps, commansione firmata, non jam alterum à me, sed in ipso me alterum mihi obvenisse faciebat. Exultavit cor meum propter singularitatem affectionis, et prop-

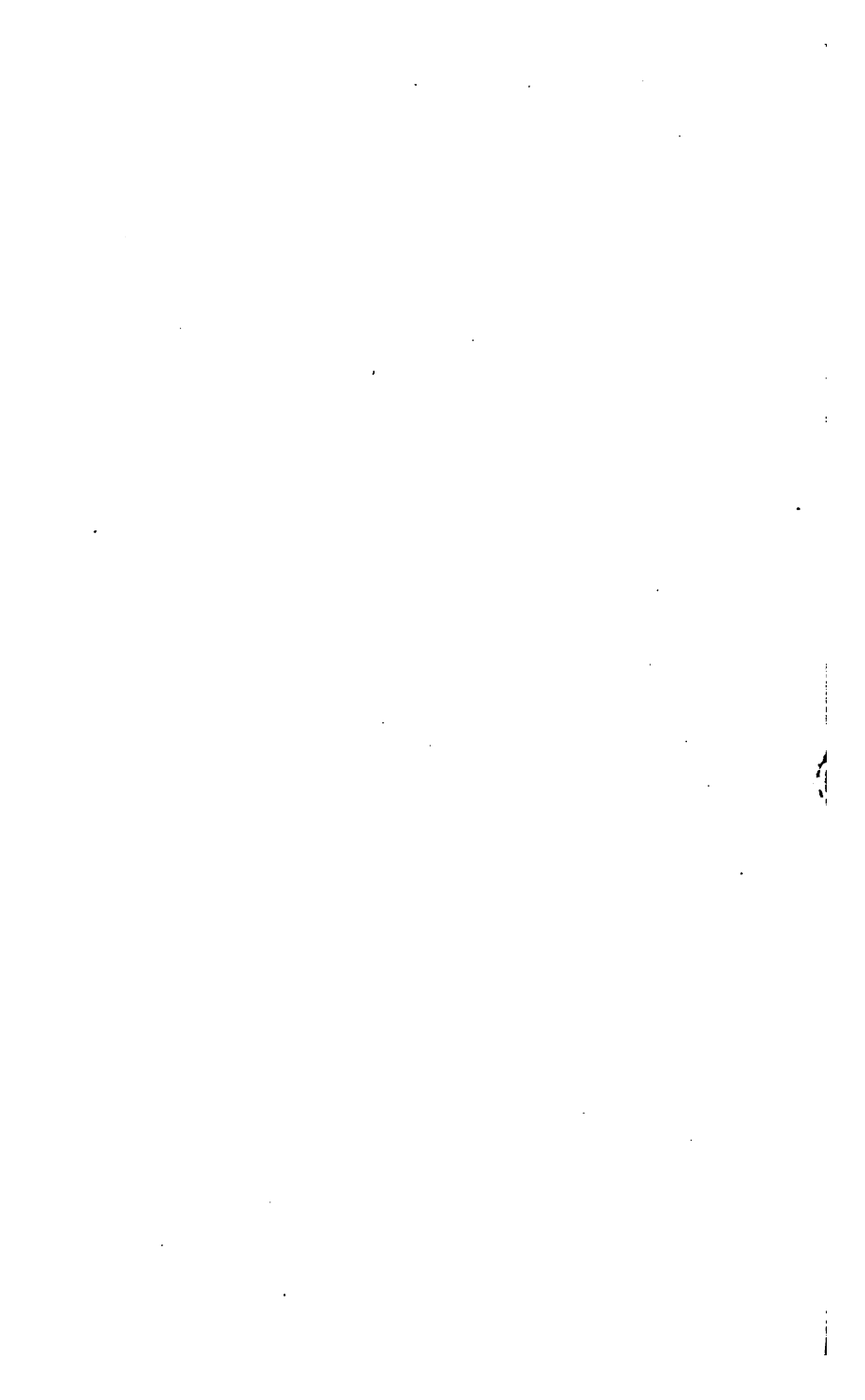
ter rumores, quos recensiere mihi tam fidelis nuncius poterat; de nostrorum prosperitate propinquorum, quorum omnium hic non tam sanguine quam amore fuit propinquissimus. Properantem ad transitum et transfretationem, diu reluctantem vici precum instantia. Philippus hic erat, filius patricii olim illustris, Comitum Sarisberiensis, cujus neptis ex fratre comitatum Sarisberiensem jure matrimonii transfundit in istum avunculum vestrum, Domine Imperator. Inter volentem et invitum meliore consilio trahitur amicus ad civitatem Nolanam, ubi tunc ex mandato Domini mei, illustris regis Siculi Gulielmi mansio, mihi erat ob declinandos Panormitanos tumultus ac fervores æstivos. Quid plura? Post aliquod dies deliberavimus ad Neapolitanum mare accedere, si quo fortassis eventu paratior ac minus sumtuosa nobis illic occurreret transfretatio. Civitatem advenimus, in hospitio venerabilis auditoris mei in jure canonico apud Bononiam, Johannis Pinatelli, Neapolitani Archidiaconi, scientiâ, moribus et sanguine illustris, nos recipientes; a quo jucundè suscepti, causam adventus nostri pandimus, ipseque, comperta voti nostri instantia, dum parantur epulæ, mare nobiscum accedit. Facto vix unius horæ spatio, succincta brevitate verborum navis conducitur pretio optato, et ad instantiam viatorum dies data ad navigandum accelerat. Ad hospitium redeuntibus sermo est, quo successu quibusve auspiciis omnia nobis desiderata tam celeri manu occurrerint? ignorantibus et stupentibus nobis de tanta felicitate successuum: "Heus" inquit Archidiaconus, "per quam civitatis portam intrastis?" cumque, quæ fuerit porta, explicarem; ille perspicax intellectus adjecit: "Merito tam brevi manu vobis fortuna subvenit. Sed oro, mihi veredicâ relatione dicatis, qua parte aditus ingressi estis, dextrâ vel sinistrâ?" Respondemus. "Cum ad ipsam veniremus portam, et paratior nobis ad sinistram pateret ingressus, occur-

rit ex improvise asinus lignorum strue onoratus, et ex occursum compulsi sumus ad dextram declinare." Tunc Archidiaconus : "Ut sciatis, quanta miranda Virgilius in hac urbefuerit operatus, accedamus ad locum, et ostendam, quod in illa porta memoriale reliquerit Virgilius super terram." Accedentibus nobis ostendit in dextrâ parte caput parieti portali insertum de marmore pario, cujus rictus ad risum et eximie jucunditatis hilaritatem trahebantur. In sinistrâ vero parte parietis erat aliud, caput de consimili marmore infixum, sed alteri valde dissimile oculis siquidem torvis flentis vultum ac irati, casusque infelicitis jacturam deplorantis prætendebat. Ex his tam adversis vultuum imaginationibus duo sibi contraria fortunæ fata proponit Archidiaconus omnibus ingredientibus imminere, dummodò nulla fiat declinatio ad dextram sive ad sinistram, et ex industria procurata; sed sicut fatalia sunt, fato eventuique committantur. "Quisquis," inquit, "ad dextram civitatem istam ingreditur, semper dextro cornu ad omnem propositi sui effectum prosperatur, semper crescit et augetur: quicunque ad sinistram flectitur, semper decedit, et ab omni desiderio suo fraudatur. Quia ergo ex asini objectione ad dextram deflexistis, considerate, quàm celeriter et quanta prosperitate iter vestrum perfecistis."

Gervasii Tilberensis Otia Imperialia. Tertia Decisio.

C. 12, as quoted by Liebrecht in the volume to which we have already (ante p. 5) referred.

ROBIN HOOD.



ROBIN HOOD.

THE name of Robin Hood has long been so closely interwoven with the history of English romance, that a collection of our ancient fictions, which should not include some popular account of this renowned outlaw, and of the valorous exploits which were performed by him and his no less celebrated companions, would possess little claim to be considered either judicious or complete. It will not therefore be matter of surprise that this version of our hero's adventures, which is stated in the title to be "newly collected into one volume by an Ingenious Antiquary," but the several stories of which, though popular in their day, are nothing more than transpositions into prose of so many ballads from the common Garland, should be included in the present series, as from its being the *only* prose History of Robin Hood, the editor was afforded no opportunity of selection; while the subject-matter of it demanded a place so imperiously as to outweigh any consideration, of the imperfect form under which it presented itself.

As some compensation, however, for the inferiority

of the present tale to the merits of its hero, the editor has printed, for the first time, (vide Appendix) the curious history of him preserved among the manuscripts in the Sloane Library, at the British Museum. This life, written, as Ritson supposes, towards the latter end of the sixteenth century, labours in some measure under the same objection with the tale to which it is annexed, the greater part of it, being merely a reduction into prose of that very antient legend, "*A Lytle Geste of Robyn Hood*," but as that industrious antiquary, whose labours on the subject of "Robin Hood, his outlaws, and his trade," left little to be done by his followers, deemed it worthy of frequent quotation in his very curious illustrations of our hero's life, the present editor is of opinion that, in its original and perfect state, it cannot fail of being highly acceptable to all those, to whom the recollections and associations of childhood have endeared the name and memory of Robin Hood.

It now remains to point out the particular sources from which the several incidents of the following narrative have been derived, and then to instance some of the earliest and most important historical allusions to the existence of our hero and his companions, which are to be found scattered through the various pages of historians, poets, and playwrights.

Robin Hood's Delight is derived from the ballad of that name, which may be seen in Ritson's Collection, Vol. II. p. 116, who has printed it from an old black letter copy, in the collection of Anthony Wood; the full title of which is

ROBIN HOOD'S DELIGHT,

Or, a merry combat fought between Robin Hood,
Little John, and Will Scarelock and three stout
Keepers in Sherwood Forrest :

Robin was valiant and stout,
So was Scarelock and John in the field,
But these Keepers stout did give them rout,
And made them all for to yield ;
But after the battle ended was,
Bold Robin did make them amends,
For claret and sack they did not lack,
So drank themselves good friends.

To the tune of Robin Hood and Queen Katherine :
or, Robin Hood and the Shepherd.

Robin Hood's Progress to Nottingham is likewise derived from a ballad with that title, to which are added the following doggerel lines :

Where he met with fifteen forresters all on a row,
And he desired of them some news for to know,
But with cross graind words they did him thwart,
For which at last he made them smart.

Vide Ritson, Vol. II. p. 12.

Robin Hood and the Tanner is from the ballad printed by Ritson, Vol. II. p. 30, from an old black letter copy in the collection of Anthony à Wood, which is entitled,—

ROBIN HOOD AND THE TANNER;

Or, Robin Hood met with his match.

A merry and pleasant song, relating the gallant and fierce combate fought between Arthur Bland, a Tanner of Nottingham and Robin Hood, the greatest and most noblest archer of England. From an old black letter copy, in the collection of Anthony à Wood.

Robin Hood and the Butcher is from the Ballad of the same name, which Ritson has printed from an old black letter copy, also in the collection of Anthony à Wood. Vide Vol. II. p. 24.

Robin Hood and the Beggar is likewise from the ballad so called, preserved in Ritson, Vol. II. p. 122, who transcribed it from an old black letter copy which was in Anthony à Wood's collection.

Robin Hood and the Stranger boasts the same origin, but the conclusion is taken from a fragment of a different ballad, which was formerly appended to it, in lieu of the genuine second part, which may be seen in Ritson, Vol. II. p. 71.

Robin Hood and the Bishop is from a similar source : Vide Ritson, Vol. II. p. 19, as is also the next, of which original the full title is *Renowned Robin Hood* : or, his famous archery truly related in the worthy exploits he acted before Queen Katherine, he being an outlaw man ; and how he obtained his own and his fellows pardon. "To a new Tune." "It is scarcely worth "observing, that there was no queen consort named "Katherine before Henry the fifth's time ; but as "Henry the eighth had no less than three wives so "called, the name would be sufficiently familiar to "our ballad maker." Ritson, Vol. II. p. 83.

The original of *Robin Hood and the Curtal Fryer* may likewise be seen in the same collection, Vol. II. p. 58. "The Curtal Fryer," Dr. Stukeley says, "is cordelier, from the cord or rope which they wore round their waist, to whip themselves with." "They were," adds he, "of the Franciscan order." Our Fryer, however, is undoubtedly so called from his "Curtall dogs," or curs, as we now say, (*Courtalt Fr.*) In fact, he is no Fryer at all, but a monk of Fountains Abbey, which was of the Cistercian order.

Robin Hood and the Fisherman is a reduction of a ballad, entitled the same as this division of the present tale, and which is inserted in Ritson, Vol. II. p. 111. *Robin Hood's Chace*, which concludes the list,

is from a song so called, in Ritson, Vol. II. p. 92. In the preamble to the ballad it states, "that when "he had taken his leave of the queen, he returned to "merry Sherwood," but our author having to wind up his story, tells us that, "he dismissed all his idle "companions, and betaking himself to a civil course "of life, he did keep a gallant house, and had over "all the country, the love of the rich, and the prayers "of the poor." This practice it is to be observed, he has adopted on various occasions; introducing such prefatory or concluding observations as he considered necessary to connect the several portions of his narrative.

Robin Hood is said to have been born at "Locksley town, in merry Nottinghamshire," a village which though not mentioned in Spelman's *Villare Anglicanum*, or any other work of a similar description, must not therefore be set down as having no existence but in the imagination of the ballad maker, since numbers of names of towns and villages are known, which can only be traced in ancient writings. His birth is supposed to have taken place about the year 1160, in the reign of Henry the second; and the Sloane MS. says, "he lived tyll the latter end of Richard the fyrst;" which is corroborated by Major, who says, "Circa hæc tempora [s. Ricardi 1.] ut auguror, Robertus Hudus

et Parvus Joannes latrones famosissimi, in nemoribus latuerunt, solum opulentum virorum bona diripientes. Nullum nisi eos invadentem vel resistantem pro suarum rerum tuitione occiderunt. Centum sagittarios ad pugnam aptissimos Robertus latrociniis aluit quos 400 viri fortissimi invadere non audebant. Fœminam nullam opprimi permisit, nec pauperum bona surripuit, verum eos ex abbatum bonis ablatis opipare pavit. Viri rapinam improbo, sed latronum omnium humanissimus et princeps erat." (*Majoris Britanniae Historia*. Edin. 1740. p. 128.) Stowe in his *Annales*, 1592, p. 227, gives an almost literal version of the above passage; Richard Robinson versifies it, and a MS. note in the British Museum, (Bib. Har. 1233), not in Mr. Wanley's opinion to be relied on, places him in the same period. Fordun and Hector Boece agree in bringing him down to the time of Henry the third, which is not far distant, and Charlton in his *History of Whitby*, 4to. 1779, speaks of him as living in the days of "Abbot Richard and Peter his successor," that is between the years 1176 and 1211. But the opinion of Sir Edward Coke ought, perhaps, to be considered decisive, who says, "This Robin Hood lived in the reign of King Richard the first." (3 Institute 197).

It would appear from popular belief and much cor-

roborative evidence, that he was of noble extraction, and at the latter part of his life, at least, he bore the title of Earl of Huntingdon. The sense of the Sloane MS. evidently requires that the epithet to be adjoined to the word parentage should be "noble." So likewise the Harleian note, "It is said that he was of noble blood," and Leland expressly calls him "nobilis." The following account of his family, if proved, would justify this designation: Ralph Fitzothes, or Fitzooth, a Norman, who had come over to England with William Rufus, married Maud or Matilda, daughter of Gilbert de Gaunt Earl of Kyme and Lindsey, by whom he had two sons: Philip afterwards Earl of Kyme, that earldom being part of his mother's dowry, and William. Philip, the elder, died without issue: William was a ward to Robert de Vere Earl of Oxford, in whose household he received his education; and who, by the king's express commands, gave him in marriage to his own niece, the youngest of the three daughters of the celebrated Lady Roisia de Vere, daughter of Aubrey de Vere, Earl of Guisnes, in Normandy, and Lord high chamberlain of England under Henry the first, and of Adeliza, daughter to Richard de Clare, Earl of Clarence and Hertford, by Payn de Beauchamp, Baron of Bedford, her second husband. The offspring of this marriage was, our hero, Robert

Fitzooth, commonly called Robin Hood. (See Stukeley's *Palæographia Britannica*, No. 1. passim). The pedigree of Robin Hood, Earl of Huntingdon, may be seen in No. 2, of the same work.

Several explanations have been attempted of the manner in which the name of Robert Fitzooth was altered or corrupted into that of Robin Hood. It has been pretended that *Hood* is only a corruption of "o'th'wood," q. d. of Sherwood. "This," says the late editor of the poems of which he was the subject, "is an absurd conceit; but if the name were a matter of conjecture, it might be probably enough referred to some particular sort of *hood* our hero wore by way of distinction or disguise." See Scot's *Discoverie of Witchcraft*, 1584. p. 522. But an ingenious writer in the *Quarterly Review* for January, 1820, speaking of Puck says, "Puck is also found under the character of Robin Goodfellow or Robin Hood; the outlaw acquired his bye name from his resemblance to the unquiet wandering spirit. The Robin Hood of England is also the Scottish Red Cap, and the Saxon spirit Hudken or Hodeken, so called from the hoodiken, or little hat which he wore, and which also covers his head when he appeared in the shape of the Nisse of Sweden." This opinion may, perhaps, be carried still farther, and from the

likeness between the two, we may suppose the wily fiend to owe his appellation of Robin Goodfellow, to the fondness with which the merry outlaw was everywhere regarded.

His wild and extravagant disposition, which consumed his inheritance and caused him to be outlawed for debt, is alleged as the reason which induced him to betake himself to the woods, and to the life which he there led. This account, which varies from that given in the Appendix, is confirmed by the Harleian note, which mentions his "having wasted his estate in riotous courses;" but differs from that given by Dr. Stukeley, in a MS. note in his copy of the Garland, who says, "Robin Hood took to this wild way of life, in imitation of his grandfather Geoffrey Mandeville, who being a favourer of Maud Empress, K. Stephen took him prisoner at S. Albans, and made him give up the tower of London, Walden, Plessis, &c. upon which he lived *on plunder*."

Barnsdale in Yorkshire, Sherwood in Nottinghamshire, and Plompton Park in Cumberland, were the haunts which he mostly frequented, and where he was speedily joined by a number of persons, who it is to be supposed were induced so to do, more from the similarity of their conditions, than from friendship towards our hero, who from his former rank or his

superior personal acquirements, appears to have become their acknowledged leader, and to have been assisted in his government by various members of the general body. Of these his especial favourite was Little John (whose surname is said to have been Nailor). William Scarlock (Scathelock or Scarlet), George a Green, pinder (or poundkeeper) of Wakefield, Muck, the Miller's Son, and a certain monk or frier named Tuck, were the other prominent members of this league. Little John was, incontestably, the next in importance, and the names of "Robertus Hode and litell Johanne," are mentioned together by Fordun, as early as 1341. Of George a Green mention has been made in another place, and of Frier Tuck it may be observed, that he is frequently noticed by old writers, among others by Shakspeare who speaks of "Robin Hood's fat frier," and if, as has been supposed, he is *The Curtal Frier of Fountains-dale*, he must necessarily have been one of the monks of that abbey, which was of the Cistercian order: he was also as one of the companions of Robin Hood, an essential character in the morris-dance.

Every hero, whether of history or fable, must have some "ladye of his love" to inspire him with courage in the hour of danger, and be at all times the goddess of his idolatry; accordingly tradition has asserted, that Robin Hood was accompanied in his

retreat by a female of whom he was enamoured, and whose real or adopted name was *Marian*. Who or whatever this lady was, it is observable that no mention of her occurs either in the Lytell geste of Robyn Hode, or in any other poem or song concerning him, except a comparatively modern one of no merit, which has never been inserted in any of the publications entitled "*Robin Hood's Garland*," but which is given in Ritson, Vol. II. p. 157, from an old black letter copy, in the collection of Anthony à Wood. She is, however, an important character in the two old plays of *The Death and Downfall* of Robert Earl of Huntingdon, written before 1600, and is also one of the persons who figure in the ancient morris dance.

It is now time that these observations should be brought to a close, as the reader who may not yet be satiated with these desultory particulars may find a perfect storehouse of them, in the pages from whence the majority of these illustrations have been derived, namely Ritson's Introduction to his *Collection of Ballads, &c. relative to Robin Hood*. One or two more extracts shall close this preface, which will be, perhaps, too short for those who are much interested in the subject of our hero's life, and too long for those who consider him beneath their notice.

"Having for a long series of years," says Ritson, "maintained a sort of independent sovereignty, and

set kings, judges, and magistrates at defiance, a proclamation was published offering a considerable reward for bringing him in alive or dead; which, however, seems to have been productive of no greater success than former attempts for that purpose. At length the infirmities of old age increasing upon him, and desirous to be relieved in a fit of sickness by being let blood, he applied for that purpose to the prioress of Kirkley's-nunnery, in Yorkshire, his relation, (women, and particularly religious women, being in those times somewhat better skilled in surgery than the sex is at present) by whom he was treacherously bled to death. This event happened on the 18 Nov. 1247, being the 31st year of King Henry III. (and if the date assigned to his birth be correct) about the 87th of his age. He was interred under some trees, at a short distance from the house; a stone being placed over his grave, with an inscription to his memory.

The following epitaph was found amongst the papers of the late learned Dr. Gale, Dean of York.

Here undernead this laitl stean
 laiz robert earl of huntingtun
 near arcir ber aȝ hie sa geuð
 and pipl kaud im robin heuð
 sick utlawȝ aȝ hi an iȝ men
 bil england nibr si agen

obiit 24 (r. 14.) kal Dekembris 1247.

Ritson though he did not pretend to say, that the language of this epitaph was that of Henry the third's time, nor indeed to determine of what age it was, perceived nothing in it from whence one should be led to pronounce it spurious, i.e. that it was never inscribed on the grave stone of Robin. That there actually was some inscription upon it in Mr. Thoresby's time, though then scarce legible is evident from his own words: "Near unto Kirklees the noted Robin Hood lies buried under a grave stone that yet remains near the park, but the inscription scarce legible." *Duc. Leod.* p. 91; and it should be remembered, as well that the last century was not the age of imposition, as that Dr. Gale was both too good and too learned a man either to be capable of it himself, or to be liable to it from others.

Ritson, who may, perhaps, be considered as prejudiced in his favour, gives the following summary of his character and renown, and produces, in confirmation of his opinion, a body of notes replete with erudition and research. "With respect to his personal character: it is sufficiently evident that he was active, brave, prudent, patient; possessed of uncommon bodily strength, and considerable military skill: just, generous, benevolent, faithful, and beloved or revered by his followers or adherents for his excellent and amiable qualities. Fordun, a priest, extols his

piety, and piety by a priest is regarded as the perfection of virtue ; Major pronounces him most humane and the prince of all robbers ; and Camden, whose testimony is of some weight, calls him 'prædonem mitissimum,' the gentlest of thieves. As proofs of his universal and singular popularity his story and exploits have been made the subject as well of various dramatic exhibitions, as of innumerable poems, rimes, songs and ballads : he has given rise to divers proverbs, and to swear by him or some of his companions appears to have been a usual practice : his songs have been preferred, on the most solemn occasions, not only to the psalms of David, but to the New Testament ; his service to the word of God ; he may be regarded as the patron of archery : and though not actually canonized (a situation to which the miracles wrought in his favour, as well in his lifetime as after his death, and the supernatural powers he is, in some parts, supposed to have possessed give him an indisputable claim) he obtained the principal distinction of sainthood, in having a festival allotted to him, and solemn games instituted in honour of his memory, which were celebrated till the latter end of the sixteenth century ; not by the populace only, but by kings or princes and grave magistrates ; and that as well in Scotland as in England ; being considered in

the former country, of the highest political importance and essential to the civil and religious liberties of the people, the efforts of government to suppress them frequently producing tumult and insurrection: his bow and one of his arrows, his chain, his cap and one of his slippers, were preserved with peculiar veneration, till within the present century; and not only places which afforded him security or amusement, but even the well at which he quenched his thirst, still retain his name: a name which in the middle of the present century, was conferred as an honourable distinction upon the prime minister to the king of Madagascar."

"After his death, his company was dispersed. History is silent in particulars: all that we can therefore learn, is, that the honour of Little John's death and burial is contended for by rival nations; that his grave continued long 'celebrous for the yielding of excellent whetstones;' and that some of his descendants of the name of *Nailor*, which he himself bore, and they from him, were in being so late as the last century."

That poetical antiquary, Drayton's elegant description of our hero and his mode of living will form a pleasing conclusion to this overlong "tale of Robin Hood."

“The merry pranks he play’d, would ask an age to tell,
And the adventures strange, that Robin Hood befell
When Mansfield many a time, for Robin hath been laid
How he hath cousen’d them, that him would have betray’d
How often he hath come, to Nottingham disguised
And cunningly escaped, being set to be surprised.
In this our spacious isle, I think there is not one
But he hath heard some talk of him and little John;
And to the end of time, the tales shall ne’er be done
Of Scarlock, George a Green, and Much the Miller’s Son,
Of Tuck the merry Fryer, which many a sermon made
In praise of Robin Hood, his outlaws and their trade.
An hundred valiant men, had this brave Robin Hood,
Still ready at his call, that bowmen were right good,
All clad in Lincoln green, with caps of red and blue,
His fellow’s winded horn not one of them but knew,
When setting to their lips, their little beugles shrill
The warbling ecchos wak’d from every dale and hill.
Their bauldricks set with studs athwart their shoulders cast,
To which under their arms their sheafs were buckled fast,
A short sword at their belt, a buckler scare a span
Who struck below the knee, not counted them a man:
All made of Spanish yew, their bows were wondrous strong;
They not an arrow drew, but was a cloth yard long.
Of archery they had the very perfect craft,
With broad arrow, or but, or pricke, or roving shaft,
At marks full forty score, they used to prick, and rove,
Yet higher than the breast for compass never strove;
Yet at the farthest mark a foot could hardly win;
At long outs, short, and hoyles, each one could cleave the pin:
Their arrows finely pair’d for timber, and for feather,
With birch and brazil pierc’d to fly in any weather;
And shot they with the round, the square, or forked pile,
The loose gave such a twang, as might be heard a mile.

And of these archers brave, there was not any one,
 But he could kill a deer, his swiftest speed upon,
 Which they did broil and roast, in many a mighty wood,
 Sharp hunger the fine sauce, to their more kingly food.
 Then taking them to rest, his merry men and he
 Slept many a summers night under the greenwood tree.
 From wealthy abbots chests, and churls abundant store,
 What oftentimes he took, he shared among the poor :
 No lordly Bishop came, in lusty Robin's way
 To him before he went, but for his pass must pay :
 The widow in distress he graciously reliev'd,
 And remedied the wrongs of many a virgin griev'd :
 He from the husbands bed no married woman wan,
 But to his mistress dear, his loved Marian,
 Was ever constant known, which where'soe'er she came
 Was sovereign of the woods ; chief Lady of the game ;
 Her clothes tuck'd to the knee and dainty braided hair
 With bow and quiver arm'd, she wander'd here and there
 Amongst the forests wild ; Diana never knew
 Such pleasures, nor such harts as Mariana slew."

Polyolbion. Song 26.

The noble Birth and gallant Atchievements of Robin Hood, &c. was first printed by W. O. (William Onley), 4to. bl. lett. and is supposed to be the 'small merry book' called *Robin Hood*, mentioned in the list of 'books, ballads and histories,' printed for and sold by William Thackeray, at the Angel, in Duck Lane, (about 1680), preserved in one of the volumes of Old Ballads (part of Bagford's Collection) in the British Museum.

Since the foregoing notice was written, Robin Hood

and his real place in History have been made the subject of investigation by several well-known antiquaries. M. Thierry sees in him the chief of a band of Saxons, who avoided the Norman yoke by flight to the greenwood, where they lived in open defiance and avowed hostility to the conquerors. Mr. Wright, in his "*Essays on the Literature of the Middle Ages*," while favouring M. Thierry's views, sees in his name at least traces of his connection with the early mythology of the Teutonic people. Mr. Gutch, in the two handsome volumes which he has published upon the subject, insists upon the historic character of the hero, but places him at a far more recent period than that assigned to him by Thierry.

None of these writers, however, have produced such new and curious matter in support of their peculiar views as has been brought forward by my learned friend Mr. Hunter, in *The Ballad Hero Robin Hood*.* Mr. Hunter has discovered among the Records under his charge, and of which he knows how to make such excellent use, evidence as it seems to him, not only that Robin Hood was a real personage—but who and what he actually was. He argues with great ingenuity, and we must add probability, that the incidents in the

* This is No. 4 of Mr. Hunter's valuable Series of *Critical and Historical Tracts*.

Lytel Geste were founded in fact—and even shows that it is not impossible but that the *Lytel Geste* itself might have been penned by Richard Rolle, the Hermit of Hampole—for Hampole was but a short distance from Barnsdale.

We cannot of course within our limits, even if it were just to Mr. Hunter, quote the grounds on which his opinion has been formed. But we will give his views in his own words.

“My theory then on the whole is this. That neither is Robin Hood a mere poetic conception, a beautiful abstraction of the life of a jovial freebooter living in the woods, nor one of those fanciful beings, creatures of the popular mind springing in the very infancy of Northern civilization, “*one amongst the personages of the early mythology of the Teutonic people*,” as Mr. Wright informs us: but a person who had a veritable existence quite within historic time, a man of like feelings and passions as we are. Not, however, a Saxon struggling against the Norman power in the first and second reigns of the House of Anjou, nor one of the *Exheredati* of the reign of King Henry the Third: but one of the *Contrariantes* of the reign of King Edward the Second, and living in the early years of the reign of King Edward the Third, but whose birth is to be carried back into the reign of

King Edward the First, and fixed in the decennary period, 1285 to 1295: that he was born in a family of some station and respectability seated at Wakefield or in villages around: that he, as many others, partook of the popular enthusiasm which supported the Earl of Lancaster, the great baron of those parts, who, having attempted in vain various changes in the government, at length broke out into open rebellion with many persons, great and small, following his standard: that when the Earl fell, and there was a dreadful proscription, a few persons who had been in arms not only escaped the hazards of battle, but the arm of the executioner: that he was one of these: and that he protected himself against the authorities of the time, partly by secreting himself in the depths of the woods of Barnsdale or of the forest of Sherwood, and partly by intimidating the public officers by the opinion which was abroad of his unerring bow, and his instant command of assistance from numerous comrades as skilled in archery as himself: that he supported himself by slaying the wild animals who were found in the forests, and by levying a species of black-mail on passengers along the great road which united London with Berwick, occasionally replenishing his coffers by seizing upon treasure as it was being transported on the road: that there was a self-aban-

donment and a courtesy in the way in which he proceeded, which distinguishes him from the ordinary highwaymen : that he laid down the principle, that he would take from none but those who could afford to lose, and that if he met with poor persons he would bestow upon them some part of what he had taken from the rich ; in short, that in this respect he was the supporter of the rights or supposed reasonable expectations of the middle and lower ranks, a *leveller* of the times : that he continued this course for about twenty months, April, 1322, to December, 1323, meeting with various adventures as such a person must needs do, some of which are related in the ballads respecting him : that when, in 1323, the king was intent upon freeing his forests from such marauders, he fell into the king's power : that this was at a time when the bitter feeling with which the king and the Spensers at first pursued those who had shown themselves such formidable adversaries had passed away, and a more lenient policy had supervened, the king, possibly for some secret and unknown reason, not only pardoned him all his transgressions, but gave him the place of one of the "vadlets, porteurs de la chambre," in the royal household, which appointment he held for about a year, when the love for the unconstrained life he had led, and for the charms of the

country returned, and he left the court, and betook himself again to the greenwood shade: that he continued this mode of life, we know not exactly how long, and that at last he resorted to the prioress of Kirklees, his own relative, for surgical assistance, and in that priory he died and was buried.

“This appears to me to be, *in all likelihood*, the outline of his life; some parts of it, however, having a stronger claim upon our belief than other parts. It is drawn from a comparison of the minstrel testimony with the testimony of records of different kinds, and lying in distant places. That I give full, ample, and implicit credence to every part of it, I do not care to affirm; but, I cannot think that there can be so many correspondences between the ballad and the record without something of identity; and if we strike out the whole of what is built upon the foundation of the alleged relationship of the outlaw to the Prioress of Kirklees, it will still remain the most probable theory respecting the outlaws that they were soldiers escaped from the battle of Boroughbridge, and the proscription which followed.”

If the reader shares our interest in this old English Hero he will not be either weary of this Introduction, or unwilling to examine for himself the full details of Mr. Hunter's very ingenious Essay.

THE NOBLE
B I R T H
AND
Gallant Atchievements of that
Remarkable Outlaw
R O B I N H O O D.

TOGETHER WITH A TRUE ACCOUNT OF THE MANY MERRY
AND EXTRAVAGANT EXPLOITS HE PLAY'D IN TWELVE
SEVERAL STORIES.

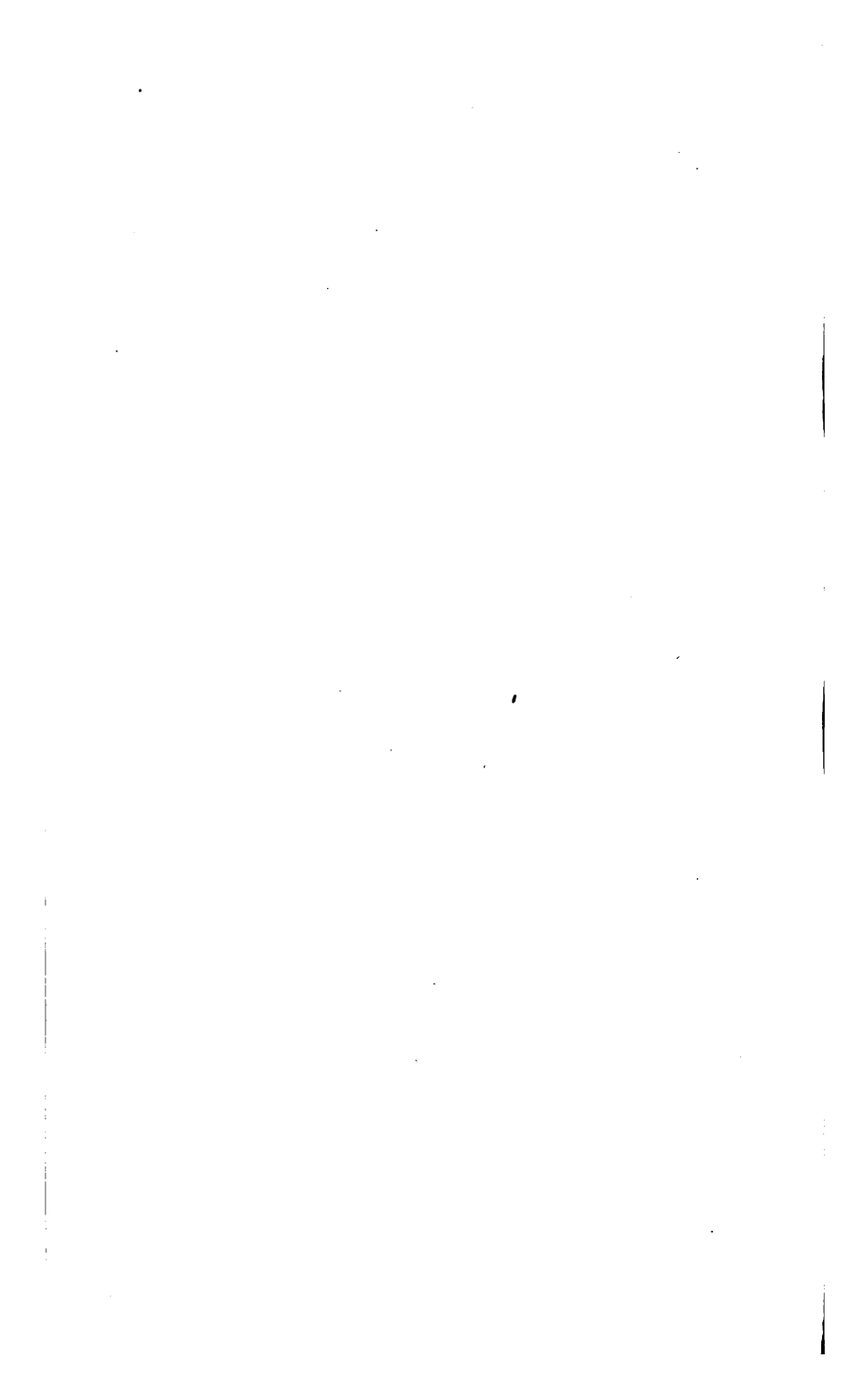
VIZ.

The Noble Parentage of Robin Hood.	Robin Hood and the Stranger.
Robin Hood's Delight.	Robin Hood and the Bishop.
Robin Hood and the Fifteen Forresters.	Robin Hood and Queen Catherine.
Robin Hood and the Tanner.	Robin Hood and the Curtal Fryer.
Robin Hood and the Butcher.	Robin Hood and the Fisherman.
Robin Hood and the Beggar.	Robin Hood's Chase.

Newly collected into one Volume by an Ingenious
Antiquary.

L O N D O N,
PRINTED BY A. P. AND T. H. FOR T. VERE AT THE SIGN OF
THE ANGEL WITHOUT NEWGATE.

1678.



THE
NOBLE PARENTAGE AND
THE ATCHIEVEMENTS OF ROBIN HOOD.

ROBIN HOOD was descended of the noble family of the Earl of Huntingdon, and being outlaw'd by Henry the Eighth for many extravagances and outrages he had committed, he did draw together a company of such bold and licentious persons as himself, who lived for the most part on robberies committed in or neer unto Sherwood Forest in Nottinghamshire. He had these always ready at his command, so that if need did require, he at the winding of his horn would have fifty or more of them in a readiness to assist him. He whom he most affected, by reason of his low stature, was called Little John, but not inferior to any of them in strength of body and stoutness of spirits. He would not entertain any into his service, whom he had not first fought withal himself, and made sufficient tryal of his courage and dexterity how to use his weapons, which was the reason that oftentimes he came home so hurt,

and beaten as he was; which was nevertheless no occasion of the dimanution of his love to the person whom he fought with, for ever afterwards he would be the more familiar with him, and better respect him for it. Many petitions were preferred to the king for a pardon for him, which the king (understanding of the many mad pranks he and his associates played) would give no ear unto; but being attended with a considerable guard, did make a progress himself to find him out, and to bring him to condign punishment. At the last, by the means and mediation of Queen Katherine, the king's wrath was qualified, and his pardon sealed, and he spent his old age in peace, at a house of his own, not far from Nottingham, being generally beloved and respected of all. We shall here give you an account of the several combats that he fought and the many odd and merry pranks he played, the one whereof by the strangeness of it, will add more respect unto his story; and the other by their variety, will abundantly serve to give more delight unto the Reader.

ROBIN HOOD'S DELIGHTS;

Or, a gallant combate fought between Robin Hood, Little John, and William Scarlock, and three of the keepers of the King's deer in the forrest of Sherwood in Nottinghamshire.

ON a Midsummers day in the morning, Robin Hood being accompanied with Little John and Will Scarlock, did walk forth betimes, and wished that in the way they

might meet with some adventure that might be worthy of their valour : they had not walked long by the forrest side, but behold three of the keepers of the Kings game appeared, with their forrest-bills in their hands, and well appointed with fauchions and bucklers to defend themselves. Loe here (saith Robin Hood) according to our wish, we have met with our mates, and before we part from them we will try what mettle they are made off. What Robin Hood, said one of the keepers : I the same, reply'd Robin. Then have at you, said the keepers : here are three of us, and three of you, we will single out ourselves one to one ; and bold Robin, I for my part, am resolved to have a bout with thee. Content, with all my heart, said Robin Hood, and fortune shall determine who shall have the best, the outlaws or the keepers : with that they did lay down their coats, which were all of Lincoln Green, and fell to it for the space of two hours with their brown bills, in which hot exercise Robin Hood, Little John and Scarlock had the better, and giving the rangers leave to breath, demanded of them, how they liked them : why ! good stout blades i' faith, saith the keeper that fought with Robin, we commend you, but let us make tryal whether you are as good at your sword and bucklers as you have been at your quarter-staff. Why, do you doubt of it, said Robin Hood ? we shall satisfie you in that immediately. With that having laid down their staves and thrown off their doublets, they fell to it pell mell : and dealt their blows unmercifully sore, which were carefully always

defended with their bucklers. At the last Robin Hood observing Little John and Will Scarlock begin to give ground, which they never did in all their lives before, he dissembled the danger, and calling out for a little respite to breath, he said unto the keepers, Good boys, i' faith, and the best that ever I dealt withal: let me know your names, and for the time to come, I shall give that respect unto you that belongs unto your valour. Tush, said one of the keepers, we lose time in asking after our names, if thou wilt have any more to do with our hands, or with our swords, we are for thee? I see that you are stout men, said Robin Hood, we will fight no more in this place, but come and go with me to Nottingham (I have silver and gold enough about me) and there we will fight it out at the King's Head tavern with good sack and claret; and after we are weary, we will lay down our arms, and become sworn brothers to one another, for I love those men that will stand to it, and scorn to turn their backs for the proudest Tarmagant of them all. With all our hearts, jolly Robin, said the keepers to him: So putting up theirswords, and on their doublets, they went to Nottingham, wherefor three days space they followed the pipes of sack, and butts of claret without intermission, and drank themselves good friends.

ROBIN HOOD'S PROGRESS TO NOTTINGHAM.

How being affronted with fifteen foresters as he was going to a match at shooting with his long bow before the king, he killed the said fifteen foresters.

THE name of Robin Hood did now begin to grow famous up and down the country ; those who had occasion to go from one market to another, were either afraid of him, and did forbear to go those ways where his haunts were, or else they were in fee with him, and every quarter did give him money, that with their goods and cattle they might pass by unmolested. This he conceived to be a secure and thriving way to fill his pockets, wherefore he contracted with all the graziers and rich farmers thereabouts, who had rather to give him every quarter a certain sum of money, then to be liable to those thefts and dangers both by day and night, which before did too much afflict them. Robin Hood in the mean time living high, and being out of any fear of hue and cry, or constables warrants, would repair oftentimes to the town of Nottingham, where he would constantly make himself full merry at the Kings Head, and no guest was more respected than himself. It so fell out, that the king lying at that time at a great earls house not far from Nottingham, the townsmen, and some other of the adjacent countrey, did intend to delight his majesty with the honest exercise and recreation of archery. Thither was going many of the rangers of Sherwood Forrest, and thither was going Robin Hood

himself, but so disguised, that it was not easie for any one to know him. The forresters meeting of him, demanded of him whether he was going, he told them to the shooting match, to which purpose he had taken his bow of ewe along with him. Thou shoot, said one of the forresters, thou —, alas young boy, thou art not able to bend a bow of ewe, much less to draw it being bent, thou shoot before the king. I will hold you twenty mark, said Robin Hood, that I will shoot a good buck one hundred rod off and kill him dead in the place. A hundred mark on that (said the forresters.) Down with your dust, said Robin, and having told down the money, with which he did go always provided, he bended his bow, and having drawn a broad arrow up to the head of it, he did let it flye at a fat buck one hundred rod off and more; the arrow entring in between the ribs of the buck, made him give a jump from the ground, and fell down dead on the place, which Robin espying, the wager (said he,) is mine, if it were for a thousand pound. It is none of thine, said the forresters, and began to threaten him with violence, if he did not let the money alone, and get him suddenly gone. Robin Hood smiling with indignation, I will go, (saith he,) but you shall stay till you are carried off the place on which you stand every mother's son of you. With that he did let flye at one of the forresters, and then at another, and at another, and left not shooting his well-levelled arrows, until that fourteen of the fifteen forresters lay dead on the plain, close unto the buck: the fifteenth was making away

with all the speed he could, but Robin sent a forked arrow after him, which entring quite through his back and body, came out of his breast. Now to your costs, said Robin Hood, you have found me to be an archer; and taking up the money with him, he withdrew into the forrest to avoid all farther danger that might ensue, and the spilling of more blood. In the mean time the townsmen of Nottingham hearing that Robin Hood was abroad, and that many of the forresters were slain, did go forth in great numbers, hoping that Robin Hood was either slain, or so hurt, that they might now take him, and bring him to the king, but he having sent some of his stinging arrows amongst them, they found to their costs by bleeding experience, that he was safe enough from being hurt or endangered: Wherefore having taken up the fifteen forresters that he had slain, they brought them into Nottingham town, where so many graves being digged in the church-yard, they were all buried by one another, and in death, as well as life, kept company together.

ROBIN HOOD AND THE TANNER;

OR,

ROBIN HOOD MET WITH HIS MATCH.

Relating the great and fierce combat between Arthur Bland a Tanner of Nottingham, and Robin Hood the great Archer of England.

AFTER this so sad an execution of so many of the forresters, there was not any one so hardy as to question bold Robin concerning any feats of archery, and to

Bland), I have not bought that freedom of thee, I may thank my good staff for it, and the hand that governed it. Hereupon Robin Hood demanded of him, of what trade he was, and where he dwelt ? to whom Bland made answer, I am a tanner, and have wrought long in Nottingham, and if thou ever comest thither, I do swear unto thee that I will tan thy hide for nought. Wilt thou so, said Robin, and I will do as much for thee : but if thou wilt forsake the tanners trade, and live here in the forrest with me, I dare assure thee thou shalt have store of gold and silver and want for nothing. Arthur Bland conceiving who it was, did say unto him ; If thou art Robin Hood, as by thy manhood I believe thou art, here is my hand, that if thou wilt never part with me, I will never part with thee : but where is Little John ? I would fain see him, for he is near of kin to me by my mother's side. Robin Hood no sooner heard him say so, but he blew his horn, and presently afterwards they might discover Little John coming down the hill, who observing his master to stand with his staff in his hand, asked him, What the matter was ? he told him that he had met with the tanner of Nottingham, who had tanned his hide to some tune : Marry, and that is well done, said Little John, I will see if he can tan my hide also : Friend, look to yourself, have at you. Thereupon Robin Hood cryed out, Hold thy hand, hold thy hand, he is thy friend and kinsman, his name is Arthur a Bland. My cousin Arthur, said Little John, how glad am I to see you, my good cousin, and throwing down

his staff, he did run unto him, and did imbrace him in the closest arms of love. After that Robin Hood took them both by the hand, and dancing about an old oak-tree, with a song in their mouths, and mirth in their hearts, they expressed all the signs of undissembled affection to one another.

ROBIN HOOD AND THE BUTCHER.

How Robin Hood bought of the butcher his mare, and the meat with which he was laden, and how he circumvented the sherriff of Nottingham, and deluded him of three hundred pound.

Not long afterwards Robin Hood walking in the forrest as it was his daily custome, observed a butcher riding along the way, having good store of meat on his mares back, which he was to sell in the market. Good morrow good fellow, said Robin to the butcher: Good fellow, replied the butcher, heavens keep me from Robin Good fellow, for if I meet with him, I may chance to fall short of my journey, and my meat of the market. I like thy company well, what hast thou to sell? said Robin Hood. Flesh, master, said the butcher, with which I am going to Nottingham-market. What is the price of thy flesh, said Robin Hood, and of thy mare that bears it? tell me, for if thou wilt use me well, I will buy both. Four mark, said the butcher, I cannot bate anything of it. Sit down then and tell thy money, said Robin Hood, I will try for once if I can thrive by being a butcher. The money being told, Robin Hood

gets up on the mare, and away he rides with the meat to Nottingham market, where he made such good penniworths, that he had sold all his meat by ten of the clock in the morn ; He sold more meat for one penny than others could do for five. The butchers in the market, that had their stands by him, said one to another : Certainly this man's meat is nought and putrified, or else he hath stolen it. From whence comes he ? saith another, I never did see him before : That will I tell you by and by, said a third butcher, and stepping to Robin Hood, said unto him, brother, thou art the freest butcher that ever came to this market, we be all of one trade, come let us dine together. Accurst be he that will deny a butcher so fair an invitation, said Robin Hood, and going with him to the inn, the table was suddenly covered and furnished, and the best man in the company being to say grace, Robin Hood at the upper end of the table did put off his bonnet : God bless us all (said he) and our meat upon this place, a cup of sack is good to nourish the blood, and so I end my grace. Robin Hood was no sooner sat, but he called for a cup of sack, and drank to them all, desiring them to be merry, for if there were five pounds to pay, he would pay it every farthing. Thou art the bravest blade, said the butchers, that ever came to Nottingham market. Robin Hood still called for more wine, and the cups trouled up and down the table, insomuch that the sheriff, who was newly alighted, and taken his chamber in the inn, understanding of it, said, He was some pro-

digal that had sold his land, and would now spend it all at once : which coming to Robin Hood's ear, he after dinner took the opportunity to speak unto him : And what, said the sheriff, Good fellow, thou hast made a good market to day, hast thou any more horned beasts to sell ? Yes, that I have, said Robin Hood to master sheriff, I have two or three hundred, and a hundred acres of good land to keep them on, as ever the crow flew over, which if you will buy of me, I will make you as good assurance of it, as ever my father made me. The sherriff being a covetous man, and persuading himself that he would make him Robin Hood's penniworths, commanded his horse to be brought forth, and taking some money with him for the purchase, he rode with Robin Hood, who led him into the forrest for a mile or two outright. The sherriff being laden with good store of gold, and surprized with the melancholy of the place, did wish himself at Nottingham again : and why so ? said Robin Hood : I tell thee plainly said the sheriff, I do not like thy company. No, said Robin Hood, then I will provide you better. God keep me from Robin Hood, for this is the haunt he useth. Robin Hood smiling observed a herd of three hundred gallant deer, feeding in the forrest close by him, and demanded of the sherriff how he liked those horned beasts, assuring him that they were the best that he could shew him : with that he blew his horn, whereupon Little John with fifty more of his associates came presently in, to whom Robin Hood imparted that he had brought with him the

sherriff of Nottingham to dine with him. He is welcome, said Little John, I know he hath store of gold, and will honestly pay for his dinner. I, I, said Robin Hood never doubt it : and taking off the sherriffs portmantle, he took to himself the three hundred pounds that was in it, then leading him back through the forrest, he desired him to remember him kindly to his wife, and so went laughing away.

ROBIN HOOD AND THE BEGGAR.

Showing how he fought with the beggar, and changed cloaths with him : and how going afterwards a begging to Nottingham, he saved three brothers who were all condemned for stealing the kings deer,

BUT Robin Hood took not any long delight in the mare which he bought of the butcher, but having now supplied himself with good store of money which he had gotten by the sheriff of Nottingham, he bought him a stout gelding, and riding one day on him towards Nottingham, it was his fortune to meet with a poor beggar. Robin Hood was of a frolick spirit, and no accepter of persons, but observing the beggar to have several sorts of bags, which were fastened to his patched coat, he did ride up to him, and giving him the time of the day, he demanded of him what countryman he was ? a Yorkshire-man, said the beggar, and I would desire of you to give me something : Give thee, said Robin Hood : why I have nothing to give thee, I am a poor ranger in the forrest, and thou seemest to be a lusty knave, shall

I give thee a good bastinado over the shoulder ? Content, content, said the beggar, I durst lay my coat and all my bags to a thready point thou wilt repent it : with that Robin Hood alighted, and the beggar and he fell to it, he with his sword and buckler, and the beggar with his long quarter-staff, who so well defended himself, that let Robin Hood do what he could, he could not come within the beggar, to flash him to a remembrance of his over-boldness ; and nothing vexed him more, then to find that the beggar's staff was as hard and as obdurate as iron it self, but so was not Robin Hood's head, for the beggar with all his force did let his staff descend with such a side blow, that Robin Hood for all his skill could not defend it, but the blood came trickling down his face, which turning Robin Hood's courage into revenge and fury, he let flye at him with his trusty sword, and doubled blow on blow, but perceiving that the beggar did hold him so hard to it, that one of his blows was but the fore-runner of another, and every blow to be almost the Postillion of Death, he cryed out to him to hold his hand ; That will I not do, said the beggar, unless thou wilt resign unto me thy horse, and thy sword, and thy cloaths, with all the money thou hast in thy pockets : The change is uneven, said Robin Hood, but for once I am content : So putting on the beggars cloaths, the beggar was the gentleman, and Robin Hood the beggar, who entering into Nottingham-town with his patched coat and several wallets, under-

•

stood that three brethren were that day to suffer at the gallows, being condemned for killing the kings deer, he made no more ado but went directly to the sherriffs house, where a young gentleman seeing him to stand at the door, demanded of him what he would have ? Robin Hood returned answer that he came to crave neither meat nor drink, but the lives of those three brothers who were condemned to dye. That cannot be, said the young gentleman, for they are all this day to suffer according to law, for stealing of the kings deer, and they are already conveyed out of town, to the place of execution. I will be there with them presently, said Robin Hood, and coming to the gallows, he found many making great lamentation for them : Robin Hood did comfort them, and assured them they should not dye, and blowing his horn, behold on a sudden a hundred brave archers came unto him, by whose help having released the prisoners, and killed the hangman, and hurt many of the sherriffs officers, they took those who were condemned to dye for killing the king's deer along with them, who being very thankful for the preservation of their lives, became afterwards of the yeomandry of Robin Hood.

ROBIN HOOD REVIVED,

OR,

HIS GALLANT COMBAT WITH A VALIANT YOUNG GENTLEMAN,

WHO PROVED AFTERWARDS TO BE HIS KINSMAN.

EVERY day almost did answer the expectation of Robin Hood, for every day did administer him one new adventure or another: he now did wish he had continued his butchers trade a little longer, for provisions grew scarce, and he had not therewith to maintain his retinue or himself: riding therefore forth to see what good fortune he could be master of, he met with a young gentleman that had shot a buck; Robin Hood was not far off when it was done, and commended him for his archery, and offered him a place in his service, to be one of his yeomen which the young gentleman disdaining, told him if he would not be gone, he would kick him out of that place: Robin Hood being unused to such affronts, assured him that he had men enough to take his part if he would but blow his horn. Sound it, and thou darest, said the gentleman, I can draw out a good sword that shall cut thy throat and thy horn too: these rough words made Robin Hood so impatient, that he did bend his bow, which the gentleman observing, said unto him, I am as ready for that as you, but then one, if not both of us shall be surely slain, it were far better to try it out with our swords and bucklers: content, said Robin Hood, we can no where find a more fitting place than under the shadow of this oak. They drew out their swords, and

to it they went : Robin Hood gave the young gentleman a cut on the right elbow, and a little prick on his left shoulder, which the gentleman returned with advantage, insomuch that both of them taking respite to breath a little, Robin Hood demanded of him if he had never seen nor heard of him before ; I know not who you are said the gentleman, but my name is Gamwel, I was born in Maxfield, and for killing of my fathers steward, I am forced hither to seek out my uncle, known to most men by the name of Robin Hood : why, I am the man, said Robin Hood, and throwing down his sword and buckler he made haste to embrace him whom before he had so rashly wounded. Great was the love and many the reciprocal indearments that were betwixt them, when in the instant there stepped in Little John to whom Robin Hood having communicated what had passed, he gave his kinsman a place next to Little John, Little John being always next to himself. Not long afterwards he travelled into the north, where a bonny Scot offering him his service, he refused to entertain him, alledging that he was never true either to father or kinsman, much less would he prove true to him. At that time the battel grew hot betwixt the Scots and the English, and Robin Hood turning to the English, fight on, said he, my merry men all, our cause is good, we shall not be beaten, and though I am compassed about, with my sword I will cut my way through the midst of my enemies.

ROBIN HOOD AND THE BISHOP.

Shewing how he changed cloaths with an old woman to escape from the Bishop, and afterwards how he robbed the Bishop of all his gold, and made him sing mass, &c.

ROBIN Hood being returned with renown into Nottinghamshire, did walk forth one morning on foot, to see how affairs stood in the world, he had not gone far, but he beheld a bishop riding towards London, and attended with one hundred followers. He perceived that the bishop had notice of him, and being alone, and not knowing how to avoid him, he did steal into an old woman's house, and making his complaint unto her, the old woman asked him who he was, to whom he revealed that he was the famous out-law, commonly called by the name of Robin Hood : if thy name be so, said the old woman I will do the best I can to provide for thee, for I do well remember it is not long since I received some courtesies from thee : the best way that I can advise thee to conceal thyself, is to put on my cloaths, and I will put on thine; with all my heart, said Robin Hood : so putting on her gray coat, he gave her his green one, with his doublet and breeches, and his bow and those few arrows he had. This was no sooner done, but the bishop's men, with their swords drawn entered into the house, did take the old woman, believing she had been Robin Hood, and did set her on a milk-white steed, and following himself on a

dapple gray, being overjoyed at the great purchase he had made. In the mean time Robin Hood being arrayed in the old womans cloaths, with a rock and a spindle in his hand, did address himself straight, away unto his company, and Little John beholding him coming over the green, cryed out, O ! who is she that yonder is coming towards us, and looketh so like a witch, I will shoot her dead, and being dead will nail her to the earth with one of my broad arrows : O hold thy hand, said Robin Hood, I am thy master, and coming nearer he told them what had befallen at the old womans house, and to confirm what he said, they beheld the bishop with a gallant train riding up that way. The bishop espying a hundred brave bowmen standing under a tree, in the way where he was to pass, demanded of his prisoner who they were ? Marry, replied the old woman, I think it is Robin Hood with his company: why who art thou then ? said the bishop : why I am an old woman, said his prisoner, thou proud blind bishop, and if thou wilt not believe me, lift up my leg and see. Then woe is me said the bishop. He had scarce bemoaned himself, but Robin Hood called to him, and bid him stay, and taking hold of his horse, he tied the bishop fast to the tree, and seizing on his sumpter-horse, he took out of his portmantle five hundred pound : which being done, Robin Hood sniling on Little John, and all his company laughing at one another Robin Hood bid Little John give him his horse and let him go : by no means said the company, for he shall sing us a mass before we let

him loose : which being done to the bishops great grief and shame, they set him on his horse again, with his face towards the tail, and bidding him to pray for Robin Hood, they suffered him to go forward on his journey.

RENOWNED ROBIN HOOD

OR

HIS FAMOUS ARCHERY BEFORE QUEEN KATHERINE, FOR WHICH
AT THAT TIME HIS PARDON, AND HIS FELLOWS, WAS
OBTAINED BY THE QUEEN.

ROBIN HOOD having on all hands supplied himself with good store of gold, he sent thereof a considerable present to Queen Katherine, with a petition to mediate to his majesty for a pardon for himself and his associates. The queen accepted of both, and sent one of her pages, Richard Patrington by name, to advise him to come to accomplish his request ; great was the hast that Patrington made, being well mounted, he despatched within the compass of two days and less, so long a journey. Being come to Nottingham he found that friendship, that on the next morning he was brought to Robin Hood's place ; where acquainting him with his message from the queen, he assured her by him, that he would not fail to wait upon her majesty, and withal sent a small present of his duty and observance. Immediately he clothed the chiefest of his men in Lincoln green, with black hats and white feathers, all alike, and himself in scarlet, and thus attended he came to London to the queen, who said

unto him, welcome Locksly, the king is now gone into Finsbury Field, to be present at a great game of shooting with the long-bow, and you come very seasonably unto it, do you go before, I will presently be there myself: when Robin Hood was come into Finsbury-fields, the king spake unto Tephushis bow-bearer, and bad him to measure out the line, to know how long the mark should be: and the queen not long afterwards being sat next unto him, the king asked of her, for what wager they should shoot? the queen made answer, the wager is three hundred tun of Rhenish wine, and three hundred tun of beer, and three hundred of the fattest bucks that run on Dallum-Plains. Beshrew me, said the king, it is a princely wager indeed; well, mark out the ground; this immediately was done, and it was in length full fifteen-score; Clifton a famous archer about the town, boasted that he would hit the clout every time. And now the kings archers had shot three goles, and were three for none; but the queen nothing discouraged, desired to know if any would be on her side, and Sir Richard Lee, who was descended of the noble family of the Gowers, standing close unto her, she encouraged him to lay one wager; but he being unwilling to make so desperate adventure, she spake to the Bishop of Hereford, who told her bluntly, that he would not bet one penny on her side. For said he, those that shoot on the kings side are excellent and experienced archers, and those that you have made choice of, we know not what they are, nor from whence they come; I durst

wager said the bishop, all that I have about me against them. What is that ? said Robin Hood. Fifteen score nobles, said the bishop, and that is almost one hundred pounds : 'Tis right, said Robin Hood, I will lay with you, and taking his bag of money from his side, he threw it down upon the green : William Scharlock being present, said, I will venture my life that I know beforehand who shall win this wager.

Now the archers did begin to shoot again, and now those whom the queen made choice of were equal with those of the kings side, they were both three and three. Whereupon the king spake aloud to the queen and said, the next three must pay for all. Robin Hood in the first place shot, and with such dexterity of art, that his arrow entered into the clout, and almost touched the black : he on the kings side that did second him, did shoot well, and came very near unto the clout : then shot Little John, and hit the black, at which the ladies laught aloud, being now almost sure that the game would go on their side, which Midge the millers son confirmed ; for I know not at that time whether I may most commend, his art or his fortune, but so it was that he cleft the very pin in the middle of the black, and that with such a twang of his bow, that it seemed that that did proclaim the victory before the arrow came unto the mark.

The queen having thus wan the wager, she fell down on her knees before the king, and besought his majesty that he would not be angry with any there present who

were on her side ; this the king (the day being designed to mirth) did condescend unto, although he did not well understand what she did mean by that petition. This being granted, the queen said aloud, then welcome Robin Hood, and welcome Little John, welcome Midge the millers son, and welcome every one of Robin Hood's company that is now in the field. Is this Robin Hood ? said the king, I thought he had been slain at the pallace-gate in the North. The Bishop of Hereford turning to the king, said unto him, may it pleasure your majesty, this bold outlaw Robin Hood, on Saturday was three weeks, took from me five hundred pound in gold, and bound me fast to a tree, and afterwards made me sing a mass, and to those of his most unruly company that were with him. What if I did, said Robin Hood, I was full glad of it, for I had not heard mass before in many a year ; and for recompence of it, behold sir bishop here is half your gold. No, no, said little John, that must not be, for master before we go, we are to give gifts to the king and queens officers, and the bishops gold will serve for all.

THE FAMOUS BATTLE BETWIXT ROBIN HOOD AND THE CURTAL
FRYER, AND HOW THE FRYER LET ROBIN HOOD
FALL INTO THE WATER.

ROBIN HOOD, being now grown most famous for his skill in archery, and being high in the favour of queen Katherine, did return with much honour into Nottinghamshire, whither being come, he instituted a day of

mirth for himself and all his companions ; and wagers were laid amongst them, who should exceed at this exercise, and who at that ; some did contend who should jump farthest, some who should throw the bar, some who should be swiftest a-foot in a race five miles in length, others there were with which Little John was most delighted, who did strive which of them should draw the strongest bow, and be the best marksman : Let me see, said Little John, which of you can kill a buck, and who can kill a doe, and who is he can kill a hart, being distance from it by the space of five hundred foot. With that Robin Hood going before them, they went directly to the forrest, where they found good store of game feeding before them. William Scarlock that drew the strongest bow of them all, did kill a buck, and Little John made choice of a barren fat doe, and the well directed arrow did enter into the very heart of it : and Midge the millers son did kill a hart above five hundred foot distant from him: The hart falling, Robin Hood stroke him gently on his shoulder, and said unto him, God's blessing on thy heart, I will ride five hundred miles to find a match for thee. William Scarlock hearing him speak those words smiled, and said unto him, master, what needs that ? here is a Curtal Fryer not far off, that for a hundred pound will shoot at what distance yourself will propound, either with Midge, or with yourself. An experienced man he is, and will draw a bow with great strength, he will shoot with yourself and with all the men you have, one after another. Sayest thou

so, Scarlock, replied Robin Hood, by the grace of God, I will neither eat nor drink till I see this Fryer thou dost speak of. And having prepared himself for his journey, he took Little John and fifty of his best archers with him, whom he bestowed in a convenient place, as he himself thought fitting. This being done, he run down into the dale, where he found the Curtal Fryer walking by the water side. He no sooner espyed him, but presently he took unto him his broad sword and buckler, and put on his head a steel bonnet. The Fryer not knowing who he was, or for what intent he came, did presently arm himself to encounter with him. Robin Hood, coming neer unto him, alighted from his horse, which he tyed to a thorn that grew hard by, and looking wistly on the Fryer, said unto him, carry me over the water thou Curtal Fryer, or else thy life lyes at the stake. The Fryer made no more ado, but took up Robin Hood, and carried him on his back (the story saith) deep water he did stride, he spake not so much as one word to him, but having carried him over, he gently laid him down on the side of the bank : which being done the Fryer said to Robin Hood. It is now my turn : therefore carry me over the water thou bold fellow, or be sure I shall make thee to repent it. Robin Hood to requite the courtesie, took the Fryer on his back, and not speaking the least word to him, carried him over the water and laid him gently down on the side of the bank ; and turning to him, he spake thus unto him as at first, and bade him carry him over the water once more, or he

should answer it, with the forfeit of his life. The Fryer in a smiling murmur took him up, and spake not a word till he came in the midst of the stream, where being up to the middle and higher, he did shake him from off his shoulders, and said unto him. Now chuse thee, bold fellow, whether thou wilt sink or swim. Robin Hood being soundly washed, gat up on his feet, and prostrating himself on the water, did swim to a bush of broom on the other side of the bank ; the Fryer swimed to a willow tree, which was not far from it ; Robin Hood taking his bow in his hand, and one of his best arrows, did shoot at the Fryer, which the Fryer received in his buckler of steel, and said unto him, shoot on, shoot on thou bould fellow, if thou shootest at me a whole summers day I will stand thy mark still. That will I try said Robin Hood, and shot arrow after arrow at him, until he had not one arrow left in his quiver. He then laid down his bow, and drew out his sword, which but two days before had been the death of three men. Now hand to hand they meet with sword and buckler ; the steel buckler defends whatsoever blow is given : sometimes they make at the head, sometimes at the foot, sometimes at the side, sometimes they strike directly down, sometimes they falsifie their blows, and come in foot and arm with a full thrust at the body ; and being ashamed that so long they exercised their unprofitable valour, and cannot hurt one another, they multiply their blows, they hack, they hewe, they slash, they fome. At last Robin Hood desired the Fryer to

hold his hand, and to give him leave to blow his horn: Thou wantest breath to sound it, said the Fryer, take thee a little respite, for we have been five hours at it by Fountain Abby clock. Robin Hood took his horn from his side, and having sounded it three times, behold where fifty lusty men, with their bended bows, came to his assistance. The Fryer wondring at it: Whose men, said he, be these? They are mine, said Robin Hood, what is that to thee? False loon, said the Fryer, and making a little pause he desired Robin Hood to return him the same courtesie which he gave him. What is that? said Robin Hood; thousoundest thy horn, said the Fryer, three times, let me now but whistle three times. I with all my heart, said Robin Hood, I were to blame if I should deny thee that courtesie. With that the Fryer set his fist to his mouth, and whistled three times so shrilly, that the place echoed again with it, and behold three and fifty fair ban-dogs (their hairs rising on their back, betokening their rage) were almost on the backs of Robin Hood and his companions. Here is for every one of thy men a dog, said the Fryer, and two for thee: That is foul play, said Robin Hood. He had scarce spoken that word, but two dogs came upon him at once, one before, another behind him, who although they could not touch his flesh, (his sword had made so swift a despatch of them) yet they tore his coat in two pieces. By this time his men had so laid about them, that the dogs began to flye back, and their fury to languish into barking. Little John did so beatir him-

self, that the Curtal Fryer admiring at his courage and his nimbleness, did ask him who he was: He made him answer, I will tell the truth and not lye; I am he who is called Little John, and do belong to Robin Hood, who hath fought with thee this day, five hours together, and if thou wilt not submit unto him this arrow shall make thee. The Fryer perceiving how much he was over-powered, and that it was impossible for him to deal with so many at once, did come to composition with Robin Hood: The articles of agreement were these; That the Fryer should abandon Fountain Dale, and Fountain Abby, and live with Robin Hood at his place not far from Nottingham, where for saying of mass, he should receive a noble for every Sunday throughout the year, and for saying of mass on every Holyday, a new change of garment. The Fryer contented with these conditions, did seal to the agreement. And thus by the courage of Robin Hood and his yeomen he was inforced at the last to submit, having for seven long years kept Fountain Dale, not all the power thereabouts being able to bring him on his knees.

THE NOBLE FISHER-MAN

OR

ROBIN HOOD'S PREFERMENT.

Shewing how he did win a prize at sea, and how he gave one half of it to his dame, and the other to charitable uses.

THE countreys and the cities being full of the exploits

of Robin Hood and his companions, he resolved with himself to make some adventure at sea, and to try if he could be as famous at sea, as he was at land. Having therefore called all his yeomen together, he did communicate unto them what was his resolution, but none of them would consent unto it, nor any of them would so much as go along with him in such an expedition. Little John in whom he much trusted, and who was partaker with him in all his counsels, and in all his dangers, was absolutely against it, and told him it was a madness in him to harbour any thought of such an adventure : Wherefore Robin Hood did go alone by himself to Scarborough, where being clad in a seamans habit, he came to a womans house by the waterside, and desired entertainment. The good woman seeing him a tall likely fellow, did ask him what his name was, he made answer, Simon over the Lee. It is a good name, said she, and I hope thou wilt make a good servant. If thou wilt be my man, I will give thee any wages that in reason thou wilt demand. I have a ship of my own, and as good as any that sails upon the sea, neither thou nor it shall want for any accommodation. Robin Hood being content to serve, took covenant-money of her, and on the next morning, the wind serving fair, the ship put forth to sea, where Robin Hood had not been long, but he fell very sick, the sea and he could not agree, which made him in many loud ejaculations to vomit forth the chollar against it. Besides, he was so extreamly unserviceable, that the master of the ship repented a thousand times

that he ever took him along with him, and every one would call him the tall unwieldy lubber. When others as they were a fishing would cast into the sea their baited hooks, he would throw in nothing but his bare line, without any hook or bait at all, which amongst other things made him so ridiculous, that a thousand times he wished himself again either in Sherwood forrest or in Plumpton park. At the last the master of the ship espyed a Spanish man of war to make up to him, wherefore he made away from her with all the speed he could, but being impossible to out-sail her, they yielded themselves lost, and all the goods in the ship. Robin Hood who called himself Simon over the Lee, seeing all men in despair, took courage to himself, and bad his master but give him his bow and his arrows, and he would deal well enough with them all. Thou deal with them, said the master, I think we all fare the worse in the ship, for such a lubber as thou art. Robin grew angry at these words, nevertheless taking his bow and arrows in his hand, he went up to the deck, and drawing his arrow up to the very head, killed one Spaniard, and by and by another, and another. The master of the ship seeing the Spaniards to drop so fast, encouraged his men, and boarded the ship, where Robin Hood, alias Simon, behaved himself so manfully, that by his particular valour they possessed themselves of the ship, in which they found twelve thousand pound; half of which money Robin Hood allotted to his dame and her children, and the other half to his companions in the ship. No, said

the master, it must not be so, Simon, for you have won it with your own hands, and you shall be master of it ; Why then, said Robin Hood, it shall be as I have said. Half of it shall go to my dame and her children, and (since you refuse my bounty) the other half shall be for the building of an alm-house for the maintenance of the poor.

ROBIN HOOD'S CHASE :

OR,

THE MERRY PROGRESS BETWIXT ROBIN HOOD AND
KING HENRY.

ROBIN HOOD returning to Sherwood forest, did commit in Yorkshire a very strange exploit ; I cannot well tell whether he was overseen with wine or rage, but certainly it was one of the worst things that even he did. It was brought to the kings ear, who protested that such a fact should not escape unpunished : and because the sherriifs had heretofore complained that they could not take him, he was resolved to ride in pursuit of him himself. Being therefore come with a royal retinue unto Nottingham, all the county was laid for him ; which Robin Hood understanding, he by the advice of Little John, did privately convey himself from Sherwood forest into Yorkshire : there were none with him but Little John, his cozen Gamwel, William Scarlock, and two or three more. The king being informed that he was escaped into Yorkshire, did follow him with all the speed that could be, and hue and crys were every where issued out to apprehend him. Which Robin Hood

knowing, he fled out of Yorkshire to Newcastle ; and from thence to Berwick : he had not continued there long, but tydings were brought that the king was gone in the pursuit of him, he was therefore constrained to go to Carlisle, where Little John being known, his stay was very short, and away he posted unto Lancaster, and from thence to Chester, where being in great danger to be betrayed, he conceived with himself that the only way for his safety was to ride to London ; where having procured admittance to the queen he told her that he understood that the king was in several places to speak with him, which caused him to come thither, to know what his majesty would have with him. The queen told him, she would do the best she could for him ; and that the king going away told her, that he was taking a journey on purpose to seek him out. Having thus dispatched his business at court, the king within few days afterwards came to it, where finding by the queen that Robin Hood understanding his majesty would speak with him, had been there to speak with him. He is a cunning knave, said the king. The queen falling down on her knees, besought him that (for his welcome to court) he would for once give her the life of that poor Outlaw ; which being condescended to, Robin Hood dismissed all his idle companions, and betaking himself to a civil course of life, he did keep a gallant house, and had over all the country, the love of the rich, and the prayers of the poor.

THE END.

APPENDIX.

LIFE OF ROBIN HOOD.

From MS. Sloan. 715. nu. 7. f. 157.

ROBIN HOOD was borne at Lockesley in yorke-shyre, or after others in Notinghamsh. in y^e dayes of Henry y^e 2nd about y^e yeare 1160, but lyued tyll y^e latter end of Rich^d y^e fyrst, he was of wo! * parentage, but so ryoto^s y^t he lost or sould his patrimony & for debt became an outlawe, thē ioyning to him many stout fellows of like disposicōn, amongst whome one called little John was principal, or next to him they haūted about Barnsdale forrest †, Clōpton parke, & such oth^r places, they vsed most of al shooting wherin they excelled all the mē of the land, though as occatiō required, they had al so oth^r weapons. one of his first exployts was y^e goyng abroad into a

* Ritson says, "though the material word is illegible, the sense evidently requires *noble*."

† Qy. Plompton Park in Cumberland, formerly very large and set apart for keeping of the king's deer.

forrest, & bearing wth him a bowe of exceeding great strength, he fell in to cōpāy wth certayne rangers or woodmē, who fell to quarrel wth him as making showe to vse such a bowe as no mā was able to shoote wth all, wherto Robin replied y^t he had two better thē that at Lockesley, only he bare y^t wth him nowe as a byrding bowe, at length the cōtentētiō * grewe so hote, y^t there was a wager layd about the kylling of a deere a great distance of, for pformāce wherof, Robin offred to lay his head to a certayne sōme of money, of y^e advantage of w^{ch} rash speach the oth^{rs} p'sently tooke, so the marke being found out, one of thē, they were both to make his hart faynt & hand vnsteady as he was about to shoote vrged him wth y^e losse of his head if he myst y^e marke, notwthstāding Robin kyld y^e deare, & gaue eᵛry mā his money agayne saue to him w^{ch} at y^e poynt of shooting so vpbrayded him wth dāg, to loose his hed, for that . . . ey he sayd they would drinke to geyth^r & herevpō the oth^r stomached y^e matter, & frō quarelling they grewe to fighting wth him, but Robin getting him somewhat of wth shooting dispect thē & so fled away & thē betaking him selfe to liue in the woods by such booty as he could get his company encreast to an hūdred and a halfe, & in those dayes whether they were

* So MS. for "contention."

favord or how so eṽ they were couȝed invincible, wheresoeṽ he hard of any y^t were of vnusual strength & hardynes, he would disgyse him selfe & rath^r thē fayle go lyke a begg, to become acqueynted wth thē & aft^r he had tryed thē wth fyghting neṽ giue thē over tyl he had vsed means to drawe thē to lyve aft^r his fashiō; aft^r such mān he pcurd y^e pȳner of wakefeyld to become one of his company & a freyr called Muchel, though some say he was an oth^r kynd of religio' mā, for y^t y^e order of freyrs was not yet sprung vp; Scarlock, he induced vpō this occacōn one day meting him as he walked solitary, & lyke to a mā forlorne because a mayd to whom he was affyāced was takē frō by the violence of her frēds & giuē to anoth^r y^t was auld & welthy, whervpō Robin vnderstandyng whē y^e maryage day should be, came to y^e church as a begg^r, & having his compāy not far of, w^{ch} came in so sone as they hard y^e sound of his horne, he toking y^e bryde pforce frō him y^t was in hand to have maryed her & caused the preist to wed her & Scarlocke togeyth^r. amongst oth^r y^t greatly frēded him was St Rich^d Lee a knight of Lancashire lord of . . . rso . . castle & that first vpō this occatiō it was the man' of Robin & his retinue to lyue by theiving & robbing though yet he were somewhat religiously affected, & not wth out supstitiō, but of al sayts he most honored y^e ṽgin mary, so y^t if any for her sake

asked ought of him, he wold pforme it if possibly he could, neith^r would he suffer any y^t belonged vnto him to violate womē poreme, or any of the husbādry, al theyr attempts were chiefly against fat p'lats & religious psons & howses fryres, and he is comēded of John Mayor for y^e prince of all theyues & robbers &c. ; nowe once it hapned him to send little John Scarlock & Muchel to y^e sayles vpō watling streete to meete wth some booty they wanted when any prey came to theyr hands to lead them into y^e wood to theyr habitacōn, as if they would vse some hospitalitye, but after they had eate, would make thē pay deerely for theyr cates, by stripping thē of such things as they had, so they dealt wth S^r Richard Lee leading to theyr m^r who made him y^e best cheare they had & whē S^r Rich^d. would have deputed only wth giving the thāks, Robin tould him it was not his man^r to dyne any where but he payd for such things as he tooke, & so should oth^{rs} do to him ere they pted & it were as he sayd no good mañs to refuse such doing, y^e knight tould him he had but xth w^{ch} he ment should have borne his charges at Blyth or doncastre & if he had none y^t fared ful yl wth him at y^e tyme to pte frō it onely he promised as he should be able to requite his curtesy wth y^e lyke, but Robin not so cōtented caused him to be searcht & found no more but what y^e knight had told him of, wherevpō he cōmended his true dealing & en-

quired furth^r touching y^e cause of his sadness & barenes, y^e knight tould him thē of his state & ancestry & how his soñe & hayre falling at varing^c wth a knight in Lācashire, slewe him in y^e feild, for w^{ch} & some oth^r such lyke exployts, being in dang^r to loose his lyfe, the knight to p^ure his deliverance, had been at great charges & evē lastly dryvē to pawn his castle & lyving to y^e abbot of S^t Maryes at yorke for 400lj & the cheife Justice so dealt wth y^e abbot for his state or int^erest therein, that being lyke to forfeyt his lyving for lacke of money to redeeme it at y^e day appoynted, he despayred now of al recv^y; Robin thē pittying his case gave him 400lj w^{ch} was p^{te} of suche bootyes as they had go^d, & suerty for payment againe wth in a tweluemonth was o^r lady, they also furnysht him wth apparel out of w^{ch} he was worne quyte & therefore for very shamement shortly to have past o^v y^e seas & to spend y^e rest of his lyfe as a mournful pylgrime in going to Jerusalē &c. but being now enlightned he despayred iust as his day appoynted to y^e abbot w^{ch} where the cheife in shire con^vsed accounting al the knights lands saued to thēselues, & y^e knight to try theyr charity made shewe as if he wanted money to pay the debt & whē he found no tokē of cōpassiō left thē the money & reco^ved his land for w^{ch} that paym^t were made he offred to ferme (farm) y^e abbot there-

by. nowe ere y^e twelvemonth was expyred
 S^r Richard pyvded y^e 400lj & a hundred shefe
 of good arrowes w^{ch} he ment to bestowe on
 Robin hoode, & encoūtring on y^e way certayne
 people y^t were wrastling for a great wag^r, he
 stood stil to see y^e event of y^e matt^r, so there
 was a yemā y^t p^rvayled but y^e othr ple enuying
 it & y^e rather because he was but pore & alone
 accorded among thē . . to opp's him wth wrongs,
 th^t y^e knight tooke his pte & rescued him & at
 parting gaue him 5 marks. Nowe it befell,
 y^t neere to Notinghā al the cheifest archers had
 appoynted a day of shooting for some great
 wag^r, the Sherife him selfe being appoynted to
 see the game, nowe that sheriffe was a fel
 advsary to Robin & his cōpany, & he againe of
 thē no lesse maligned, therfore to see into al
 matt^r little John was sent in disguysed man^r to
 go shoote amongst thē, where he sped him so
 wel, y^t y^e shyryfe iudged him to be y^e best
 archer, & so importuned him to be his mā y^t little
 John went home wth him vnd^r the name of Ray-
 nold greenlefe, & telling him he was borne in
 Holdernes, so- little John watched al advātages
 to do his m^r some myscheife, & vnd^rstanding
 where he vsed to goe a hūting, by some means
 pcured his m^r Robyn hood & his retinue to be in
 redynes ther about, so one day y^e shyryfe & al
 his people bin gone a hūting, little John of pur-

pose kept behinde & lay a bed as somewhat sicke, but was no son, gat vp enquired for his dyn, of y^e steward w^{ch} w^h curse words denyed him victuals tyl his m^r were come home, whervpō little John beate him downe & entred the buttry y^e cooke being a very stout fellowe fought wth him a long tyme, & at length accorded to goe wth him to y^e forrest, so they two ryfled the howse, tooke away al the shyryfes treasure & best thinges, & cōvayed it to Robin hood, & the little John repayred to y^e shyryfe, who in his hūting doubted no such matt^r, but tooke him for one of his cōpany, whervpō little John tould him he had seene y^e goodlyest heard of deere y^t was in y^e forest not far of sevē score in a cōpany w^{ch} he could bring him to, y^e sheryfe glad to heare of so strange a matt^r, went wth him tyl he came where y^e dang^r of Robyn hood & his company who led him to theyr habitaciō . . . & there s'ued him wth his owne plate & oth^r thinges y^t little John & y^e cooke had brought away, so y^t night they made him ly on y^e ground aft^r theyr owne man^r wrapt in a greene mantel, & the next day sent him away, aft^r they had takē an oth of him nev^r to pursve thē but y^e best he could do to serue thē, but y^e shyriff after ward made no more account of y^e othe thē was meete y^t. After this little John, Scarlocke, & oth^r were sent forth to meete wth some cōpany, if they were pore to helpe thē

wth some such thinges as they had, if rytch to handle thē as they saw occasiō, so vppō the way neare Barendsale, they met wth 2 blacke monkes wel horsed & accōpanyed wth 50 psons nowe because Robin theyr m^r had o^r lady in great reŵence whē any booty came to theyr hand they would say o^r lady sent thē theyr wherfore whē little John sawe y^t company he merily vsed such p^ŵbe to his fellowes encoraging thē to y^e encounter & cōming to the monkes he tould thē that though they were but 3, they durst nev^r see theyr m^r agayne, but if they brought thē to diⁿer to him; & whō the monke keapt of, little John beged to speake repchfully for making his m^r stay diⁿer so long, whervpō whō y^e monkes enquired for his m^r. name, & little John tould him it was Robin hood, y^e monk angrily replyde he was an arrant theif, of whom he nev^r hard good, little John replied as cōtume- liously, saying he was a yeomā of y^e forrest & bad him to dyⁿer, so the grewe frō wordes to strokes tyl they had kyled al but one or 2, w^{ch} they led p^ŵforce to theyr m^r, who saluted thē lowely, but y^e monke being stout harted, did not the lyke to his, thē Robin blewe his horn, & his retinue came in, they al went to dyn^r, & after y^t Robin asked him of what abbey he was, who tould he was of St Mary, now it was to y^e same to whose abbat y^e knight ought y^e 400*lj* w^{ch} Robin lent him to redeeme his

landes wth, al w^{ch} Robin pceying, begoñ to iest y^t he m̄vayled o^r lady had not sent him yet his pay w^{ch} she was surety for betwixt a knight & him, have no care M^r sayd little John, you need not to say this monk hath brought it I dare wel swere, for he is of her abbey, so Robin called for wyne & dranke to him, & prayed him to let him see if he had brought him y^e money, y^e monke swore he had nev^r hard speach of such covent before, but Robyn bare him downe he dessembled seing he knewe both Christ & his moth^r were so iust, & he confessing him self to be theyr e^vy dayes servant & messeng^r must needs have it, & therfore thanked him for com̄ing so at his day, y^e monke stil denying, Robin asked howe much money he had about him, but xx^{ty} m^rkes sayd y^e monke, thē sayd Robin if we fynd more we will take it as of o^r ladyes sending, but wil not of y^t w^{ch} is thy owne spending money, so little John was sent to search his bagges, & found about 800lj, w^{ch} he related to his m^r, telling him wth al y^t o^r lady had dobled his paym^t, yea I tould thee monke, sayd Robyn, what a trusty womā she is, so he called for wyne & drāke to y^e monke bidding him cōmend him to o^r lady, & if she had need of Robin hood, she should fynd him thākeful for so lib'al dealing, thē they searcht y^e lode of another horse, wherefore the monke tould him y^t was no curtesy to bid a mā to dyñ & beate & bynd him, & it is o^r mañ sayd Robin to leave but a litle be-

hind, so y^e monke made hast to be gone, & sayd he might have dyned as good cheape at Blyth or Dōcastre, & Robyn cal'd to him as he was going, & bad him greete wel his abbot & the rest of their cōvent, & wyssh thē to send hym such a monke ech day to dyn. thē shortly came y^e knight to keepe his day & aft. salutacōs was about to pay him his money, besyd xx^v m^kes for his curtesy, but Robyn gave it him agayne telling him howe o^r lady had sent him y^t & more by y^e abbeys cellerer, & it were to him a shame to be twyse payd, but y^e bowes & arrowes he accepted for wth he gave him at parting oth^r 400*lj*. Nowe y^e shyryffe of Notinghā, to drawe out Robin hood, made to be pelaymed a day of shooting for y^e silv^r arrowe, wherto Robin boldely wth al his trayne repayred, apoynting but 6 of his cōpany to shooting wth him al y^e rest to stand apoynted to f. f. g. . . d him,* so little John, Robin, mychel, Scarlock, Gylbert, & Reynold shot, but Robin won y^e prise frō al, whervpō the shyryfe & his company begā to quarrel, & aft. they came to fighting so long tyl, Robin & his complices had destroyed y^e sheryfes trayne for y^e most pte in y^e cōflyot, little John was sore wounded wth an arrow in y^e knee, & being not able to goe requested his m^r to slay him, & not suffer him to come into y^e sheryfes handes, avoucht he would not loose him for al England, wherfore mychel was appoynted to beare him away on his back, & wth much labo^r, & oft resting, he brought

* Qy to safeguard him.

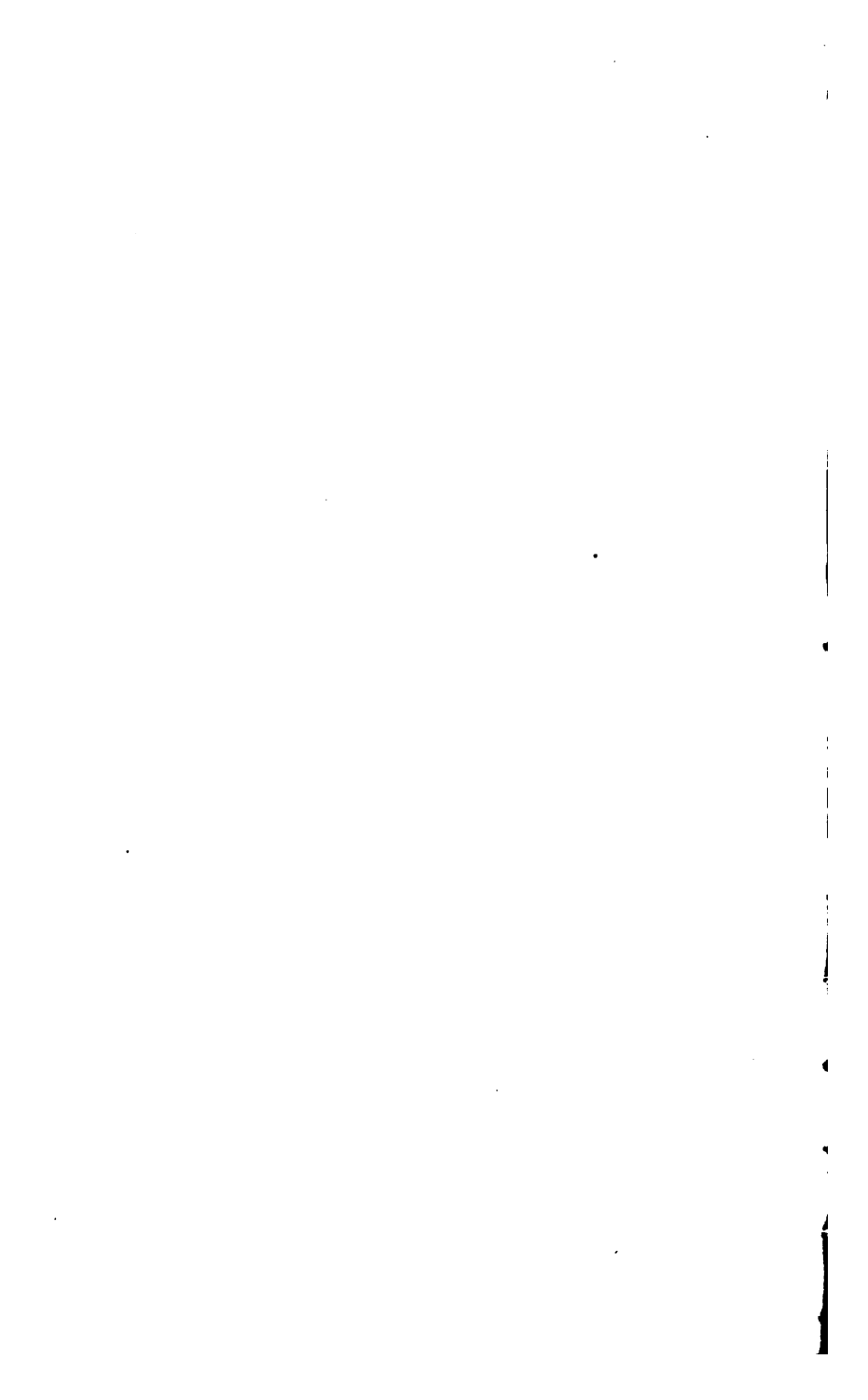
him to S^r Richard Lees castle, wheth^r also aft^r y^e broyle repayred Robin himself & y^e rest of his company, where they were gladly receyved & defended agst the sheryffe who p'sently rayased y^e cōtry & beseyged the castle who vtterly refused to yield any there tyl he knewe y^e kyng mynd. thē y^e shyryffe went to londō, & enformed y^e king of al y^e matt., who dispatched y^e shyryfe backe to levy a power of mē in y^t cōtry telling him y^t wth in a fortnight aft., he him selfe would be at Notinghā to det^{myne} of y^t matt^r, in y^e meane whyle little John being cured of his hurt, they al got thē to y^e forest agayne, whō the shyryffe hard therof he was much agreyed & sought by al means to app'hend S^r Richard Lea for defynding thē, & watching his tyme at vnwares, he surprysed him wth a power of mē as he was at hawking, & went to put him in ward at Notinghā & hang him, wherfore the knightes Lady rode in al hast to Robin, & gaue him intelligence of her Lordes distres, who in al hast pursued y^e sheryfe & ovtaking him at Notinghā wth an arrowe slewe him & if his head, enquiryng what message he brought frō y^e kyng, obiecting y^t breach of p^mise he had made to them in y^e forest, once after y^t they ovtrewed y^e sheryfe returned & loosed y^e (knyghte) out of his bondes, & furnyshing him wth weapons, tooke him wth them to y^e forest, entending to vse what means they could to p^{cure} y^e kyng, pardon, who p'sently herevpō came to Nottinghā wth a great retinue, &

vnderstanding of y^e matt^r seysed ye knighte lyving into his hande & surweying al the forrestes in Lancash. he came to Ploutu parke, & fynding al the deare destroyed he was m^yvaylo^s wroth, seeking about for Robin hood & making p^elamatiō, y^t who so could bring him S^r Rich^d Lees head should have all his land, so y^e king stayed about Nottinghā halfe a yeare, & could not heare of Robyn tyl being advysed what a hard hād he bare against religioⁿ p^esons, he got him into a monkes weed, & wth a smal company went as a traveller on y^e way wher he thought Robyn made abode who espying thē wth theyr male horse, toke hold of y^e kyng^s horse making showe as he toke him for an abbot, & begā to enquire aft^r some spending, but the king excused y^e matter, telling him howe he had lyen at Notinghā at great charges a fortnight, & had lef him but fourtylj. so Robin tokē y^t, & having devyded it amongst his mē, gave y^e kyng p^{te} againe, who semed to take it in good p^{te}, & thē puld out the kyng^s brode seale & tould him howe the kyng did greet him wel, & charged him to come to Notinghā, whervpō Robin kneeled downe & thanked y^e abbot, for he p^tended to thinke him none oth^r for bringing such a message frō him, y^t he loved most dearly of al mē & tould him, y^t for his labor he should go dyne wth him, so being brought to y^e place of theyr abode, Robyn blewe his horne & all his cōpāy came al a hoste obedyent to

theyr m^r, the kyng m^vayled, w^{ch} Robyn p^{ee}yving dyd him selfe wth his best mē s^{'ue} y^e kyng at meete of welcom^g him for y^e kyng. sake as hesayd, thē he showed him y^e course of theyr lyues & skyl in shooting y^t he might enforme y^e kyng therof, & in shooting p^{posed} this penalty to him y^t shot one of y^e garland y^t y^e abbot should giue hym a good buffet, & for the nonce made him selfe to forfayt, & whē the abbot refused to stryke him, saying it fel not for his order, but Robyn would not cease tyl he made him smyte him soundly y^t he fel to y^e ground, for w^{ch} Robyn cōmended him but Robyn him selfe stroke his mē as they fayled afterw^{..}. Robyn disco^{ved} howe he p^{ee}ved it was the kyng, & to geyther wth S^r Richard & his mē, kneeled downe & asked forgiuenes, w^{ch} the kyng gra^{uted}, vpō cōdicōn he would be fore him at y^e court, so Robyn arayed the kyng & his cōpāy in mantels of lyncolne greene, & wēt wth thē to Notinghā, the kyng seeming also to be one of the outlawes & y^e th . . . d the kyng for shooting togeyth^r for buffits, Robyn oft boxt y^e kyng, & people suspecting they should be al destroyed by Robyn & his cōpany, rā away tyl the kyng discovered him selfe & cōforted thē, & thē ech one was fayne thē was a great feast for al people, & S^r Richard Lee had his lady restored, for w^{ch} Robin gave the kyng humble thank^{..}, thē Robyn dwelt in the court a yea^{re}, tyl wth lavysh spending, he had nothing left to mayntayn him selfe & his mē, & there-f. all were de^{pted} frō him but little John & Scarlocke, & on a tyme seing young-

sters shooting, it come to his mynd howe he was alienated frō y^t exerceyse, for w^{ch} he was very greyed, & cast in his mynd howe to get away, wherfore he devy-sed to tell y^e kyng howe he had erected a chapel in Barnsdale of Mary Magdalen, & bene sore troubled in dreaming about it, & therefore craved lib'ty to go a pilgrymage thetgh barefoote, so y^e kyng gaue him a week resp^t for goyng & cōming, but Robyn being come thy^{hr}, assembled his awld trayne & nevē returned backe to y^e court, after w^{ch} tyme he contynued y^t course of lyfe about xx^{ty} years, tyl distemped wth could & age he had great payne in his lymes, his bloud being corrupted, therefore to be eased of his payne by letting blud, he repayred to y^e priores of Kyrkealy, w^{ch} some say was his aunt, a woīm very skylful in physique & surgery, who pceyving him to be Robynhood, & way-in'ghowe fel an eīm̄y he was to religio^s psons, toke reveng of him for her owne howse & all oth^{rs}, by letting him bleed to death, & she buryed him vnd^r a greate stone by y^e hy wayes syde. It is also sayd, y^t one Sr Roger of Dancastre, bearing grudge to Robyn for some injury, incyted y^e prioress, wth whom he was very familiar in such mañ to dispatch him, & thē al his company was soone despsed; the place of little Johns buryal is to this, the celeb^ro. for the yeelding of excellent whet-stones.

GEORGE A GREEN.



GEORGE A GREEN.

THOUGH the fame of George A Green, be not so widely extended, nor his positive existence so clearly ascertained as that of his more exalted cotemporary Robin Hood, the History of the Pindar of Wakefield, cannot fail to be considered as an appropriate addition to that of the hero of Sherwood ; and when we examine the characters of the heroes and the incidents of their respective stories, we shall easily account for the more extended renown of England's Merry Outlaw, by supposing the imaginative and poetical character with which his life passed in the green wood, has been clothed, and the feeling of universal benevolence with which his actions were tinctured, to have been more attractive to the people generally, than the simple valour and readiness of invention of the Pound Keeper of Wakefield. While therefore it is observed of Robin Hood, that his "story and exploits have been made the subject as well of various dramatic exhibitions, as of innumerable poems, rimes, songs, and ballads," the enumeration of the various productions of which the Pindar is the subject, is a task which may easily be performed.

A ballad "of Wakefield and a Green," was printed by the widow of Robert Toy or Tøye, who died in 1556, but whether the same with the following which is printed in Ritson's Robin Hood, vol. 2. p. 16, cannot be ascertained.

THE JOLLY PINDAR OF WAKEFIELD,

WITH

ROBIN HOOD, SCARLET, AND JOHN.

From an old black letter copy in A. à Wood's collection, compared with two other copies in the British Museum, one in black letter. It should be sung "to an excellent tune," which has not been recovered.

Several lines of this ballad are quoted in the two old plays of the "Downfall" and "Death of Robert earl of Huntingdon." 1601, 4to. b. l. but acted many years before. It is also alluded to in Shakspeare's Merry Wives of Windsor, Act. 1. sc. 1. and again in his second part of King Henry IV. Act. 5. scene 3.

In Wakefield there lives a jolly pinder,
 In Wakefield all on a green
 In Wakefield all on a green:
 There is neither knight nor squire, said the pinder,
 Nor baron that is so bold,
 Nor baron that is so bold,
 Dare make a trespass to the town of Wakefield
 But his pledge goes to the pinfold, &c.

All this be heard three witty young men,
 Twas Robin Hood, Scarlet, and John ;
 With that they espy'd the jolly pinder
 As he sat under a thorn.

Now turn again, turn again, said the pinder,
 For a wrong way have you gone,
 For you have forsaken the kings highway,
 And made a path over the corn.

O that were a shame, said jolly Robin,
 We being three and thou but one.
 The pinder leapt back then thirty good foot.
 Twas thirty good foot and one.

He leaned his back fast unto a thorn,
 And his foot against a stone,
 And there he fought a long summers day,
 A summers day so long,
 Till that their swords on their broad bucklèrs,
 Were broke fast into their hands.

Hold thy hand, hold thy hand said bold Robin Hood,
 And my merry men every one;
 For this is one of the best pinders,
 That ever I tryed with sword.

And wilt thou forsake thy pinders craft,
 And live in the green-wood with me,
 " At Michaelmas next my cov'nant comes out,
 When every man gathers his fee;

Then I'll take my blew blade all in my hand,
And plod to the greenwood with thee."
Hast thou either meat or drinke, said Robin Hood,
For my merry men and me.

I have both bread and beef said the pinder,
And good ale of the best.
And that is meat good enough, said Robin Hood,
For such unbidden 'guests.'

"O wilt thou forsake the pinder his craft,
And go to the greenwood with me?
Thou shalt have a livery twice in the year,
The one green the other brown."

"If Michaelmas day was come and gone,
And my master had paid me my fee,
Then would I set as little by him
As my master doth by me."

This it will be perceived is the incident described in the tenth chapter of the present work, and for the valour displayed by the Pindar, upon this and all similar occasions, his name has passed into a proverb, and "as good as George A Green," is a saying in use even at the present time.

A Play entitled "George A Green" was played on the 28th of December, 1593, by the Lord Strange's company, and the "Pinner of Wakefield," which

seems to be a different play on the 8th January 1593-4. —“A pleasant conceyted comedie of George A Greene
“the Pinner of Wakefield. As it was sundry times
“acted by the servants of the Right Honourable the
“Earl of Sussex, Imprinted at London by Simon Staf-
“ford, for Cuthbert Benby : and are to be sold at his
“Shop neare the Royall Exchange, 1599.” 4to. which
is reprinted in the third volume of the last edition of
Dodsley’s Old Plays, nearly resembles in its incidents
the present tale, and the variations which are to be
found in it, may most probably be attributed to the
fancy of the author whoever he was, rather than to his
having followed any different version of the story.

The Editor would have been very glad to have pro-
cured a copy of the “Pinder of Wakefield, being the
History of George A. Greene, the lusty Pinder of the
north, briefly shewing his manhood, and his brave mer-
riment amongst his boon companions : full of pretty
histories, songs, catches, jests, and riddles,” 4to. bl.
letter, 1632. which sold at the sale of Sir Robert Gor-
don’s Library for 6*l.* 1*s.* but after many fruitless
attempts he has been obliged to relinquish the hope of
doing so, and to print the present tale, which though
dated at a much later period would seem by its style
to be of considerable antiquity.

Since the present edition was undertaken he has made fresh endeavours to ascertain where that History is now deposited. These have failed, but he is satisfied that it is altogether a different work from the present.

The following quotations may serve to show the estimation in which our hero was held by the writers.

Drayton, describing the progress of the river Calder, in the West-Riding of Yorkshire, has the following lines:

"It chanced she in her course on "Kirkley" cast her eye,
Where merry Robin Hood, that honest thief doth lie;
Beholding fitly too before how Wakefield stood,
She doth not only think of lusty Robin Hood,
But of his merry man, the pindar of the town
Of Wakefield, George A Green, whose fames so far are blown,
For their so valiant fight, that every freeman's song
Can tell you of the same, quoth she, be talk'd on long
For ye were merry lads, and those were merry days."

And Richard Brathwaite, in his *Strappado* for the Divell, 1615. 8vo. p. 203 says:

But haste my muse, in colours to display
Some auncient customes in their high-roade way,

* * * * *

At least such places labour to make known,
As former times have honour'd with renown.

So by thy true relation 't may appear
 They are no others now, than as they were
 Ever esteemed by auncient times records,
 Which shall be shadowed briefly in few words.
 The first whereof that I intend to show,
 Is merry Wakefield and her Pindar too:
 Which fame hath blaz'd with all that did belong,
 Unto that towne in many gladsome song:
 The Pindar's valour and how firm he stood.
 In th' townes defence 'gainst the rebell Robin Hood,
 How stoutly he behav'd himselfe and would
 In spite of Robin bring his horse to th' fold;
 His many Maygames which were to be seene,
 Yeerely presented upon Wakefield greene,
 Where lovely Jugge and lusty Tib would go,
 To see Tom Lively turne upon the toe;
 Hob, Lob, and Crowde the fiddler would be there,
 And many more I will not speake of here:
 Good God, how glad hath been this hart of mine
 To see that towne which hath in former time
 So flourish'd and so gloried in her name,
 Famous by the Pindar who first raised the same;
 Yea, I have paced ore that greene and ore
 And th' more I saw 't I tooke delight the more,
 For where we take contentment in a place
 A whole daies walke seems as a cinquepace.

* * * *

Unto thy taske my muse and now make knowne,
 The jolly shoo-maker of Bradford towne,
 His gentle craft so raised in former time.
 By princely journey-men his discipline,
 Where he was wont with passengers to quaffe
 But suffer none to carry up their staffe

Upon their shoulders, whilst they past through town,
 For if they did, he soon would beat them downe.
 So valiant was the souter and from hence,
 Twixt Robin Hood and him grew th' difference;
 Which, cause it is by most stage poets writ,
 For brevity, I thought good to omit."

Our gallant Pindar, is thus facetiously commemorated by Drunken Barnaby.

"Hinc diverso curso, sero
 Quod audissem de pindero
 Wakefeeldensi; gloria mundi
 Ubi socii sunt jucundi,
 Mecum statui peragraré
 Georgii fustem visitare."

"Turning thence none could me hinder
 To salute the Wakefield pindar;
 Who indeed is the world's glory,
 With his comrades never sorry, .
 This was the cause, lest you should miss it,
 George's club I mean to visit."

"Veni Wakefield peramœnum,
 Ubi querens Georgium Greenum,
 Non inveni, sed in lignum
 Fixum reperi Georgii signum,
 Ubi allam bibi feram "
 Donec Georgio fortior eram."

"Straight at Wakefield I was seen a
 Where I sought for George A Green a ;

But could not find such a creature,
Yet on a sign I saw his feature,
Where strength of ale had so much stirr'd me,
That I grew stouter far than Jordie."

I may here add, that having endeavoured through the medium of NOTES AND QUERIES to ascertain in whose possession *The Pinder of Wakefield* of 1632 now is, I was favoured with communications from Mr. Sternberg and Mr. Halliwell on the subject of a MS. of the Story to be found in the Library of Sion College. Upon reference to that manuscript it proved to be, as I suspected from information which reached me soon after the publication of this romance in 1827, the manuscript lodged in a public library in the city of London referred to by "N. W." in the preface to his edition of 1706. I ought to add that upon examination it appeared that the few alterations "necessary to make the sense tolerably congruous," which N. W. had ventured to introduce were of a very unimportant character.



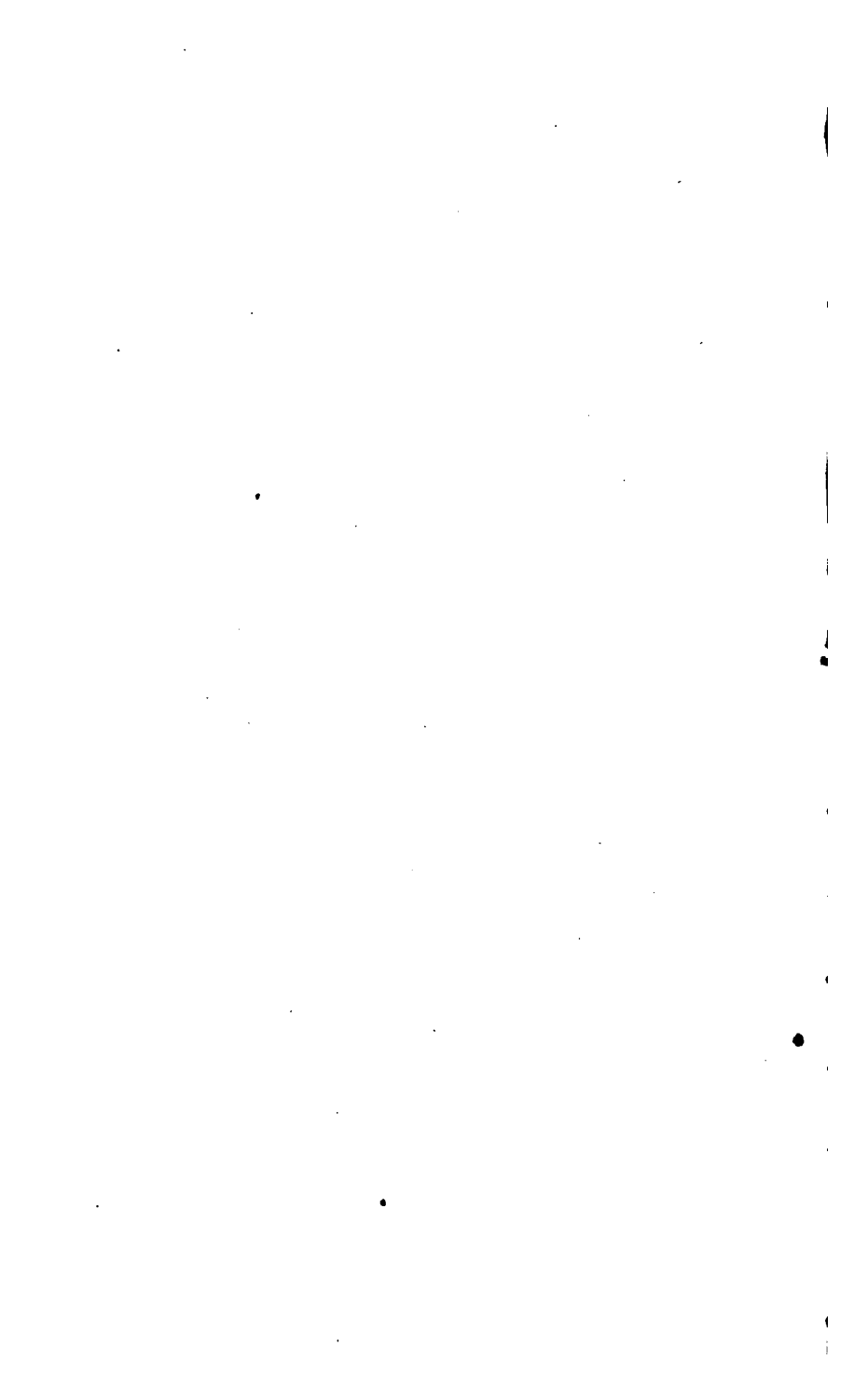
THE HISTORY
OF
GEORGE A GREEN,
PINDAR OF THE TOWN OF WAKEFIELD.

HIS BIRTH, CALLING, VALOUR, AND REPUTATION
IN THE COUNTRY.

WITH
DIVERS PLEASANT, AS WELL AS SERIOUS PASSAGES IN THE COURSE OF
HIS LIFE AND FORTUNE.

—— Famam extendere Factis:
Hic Virtutis Opus. ——
Virg. Lib. Æneid. 10.

LONDON:
PRINTED FOR SAMUEL BALLARD, AT THE BLUE-BALL,
IN LITTLE BRITAIN. 1706.



TO THE STEWARD,
AND OTHER THE
GENTLEMEN AND INHABITANTS
IN THE TOWN AND LORDSHIP OF WAKEFIELD,
IN THE
WEST RIDING OF THE COUNTY OF YORK.

GENTLEMEN,

To whom but to you should I address this History of George A Green, who was some time the Pindar of your good town of Wakefield. Your ancestors were those that fostered him, when an orphan; they were also those, on whom in his maturer years, with great generosity and unanimity, they conferred the Pindarship; and it cannot be believed, that you, their descendants, will now in this dress refuse him that protection, which he according to his wonted singular modesty, not only implores, but with all due submission, thinks himself in some measure intitled to.

Your townsman, gentlemen, he was, born among you; exceedingly beloved in his lifetime; and his memory is still fresh and survives with you, for his valour, courage, and the many good services he did you.

I shall not, gentlemen, anticipate your expectations by enumerating here the glorious acts perform'd by him ; they will best appear by the ensuing history, which is now put into your hands, in humble expectation of your favourable acceptance.

Gentlemen, as seeing the Pindar cannot but promise himself in this manner a kind reception from you ; it would be a crime to question you should be any ways wanting in your civilities to the fair Beatrice, who was as celebrated for her vertue and beauty, as George was for his valour and courage.

As for the other persons that are necessarily introduced to render the story congruous and the more intelligible, you are free to judge of them, as you think fit. All that I desire is, leave to hope that your censure will be favourable both in respect to them, and to

Gentlemen,

Your humble Servant,

N. W.

THE PREFACE.

WAKEFIELD is a market-town in the West-Riding of Yorkshire, in the Hundred of Agbridge, upon the river Calder, here covered with a fair stone bridge, which Edward the Fourth, king of England, adorn'd with a stately chappel: its a large town, well built of stone, of good antiquity, and drives the cloathing trade. Of this place it was, that George A Green was chosen Pindar, so long since as the reign of king Richard the First, as you'll find in the sequel of the history.

As for Pindar, 'tis a peculiar word and office in the north of England, that implies, one that looks after strays, and the like, being much the same as pound-keeper in the southern parts of the kingdom.

That there was such a person as George A Green, who was Pindar of the town of Wakefield, I think, is not at all to be doubted, from many considerations; to say nothing of the many signs we have of him, not only in and about London, but in several other parts,

the constant and uninterrupted tradition from father to son, they have retain'd of him to this day in the north, and more especially in the place of his nativity, is no small proof of it.

Indeed, I do not find the Pindar's name mention'd in any of our chronicles, but those of Robin Hood and Little John, who were George's contemporaries, being recorded in Hollingshead, and there being some of the descendants of Little John, who bore, and they from him, the surname of Nailor, still, or at least very lately, in being in the kingdom, I cannot conceive this makes against, but rather for our present history, the actions of the other two, in all probability, happening to become more cognizable to that chronicler, upon account of their being outlaws, and the depredations they committed, than those of George's who, as he continued stedfast in his loyalty to his prince, follow'd also an honest and lawful calling: its true, he was as conspicuous, and rather more for his valour, than any of them all; which must needs recommend him to the good opinion of the brave and generous; and 'tis not to be imagined that any should value him the less, because he was more vertuous than the other.

I confess, it pleases me not a little, that George is taken notice of by Mr. Butler, the famous author of *Hudibras*, an immortal piece; and the same seems to

be a confirmation upon the main of the truth of this history : for in his first canto of the second part, having brought Hudibras to promise his mistress he would suffer a whipping, on condition she would have him, and being not able to perswade his man Ralpho to undergo the punishment for him, he fell to threats, as if he would beat him, saying,

If not, resolve before we go,
That you and I must pull a crow.

to which the other answer'd,

Y' had best (quoth Ralpho) as the ancients
Say wisely, have a care' th' main chance,
And look before you, e're you leap ;
For as you sow, y' are like to reap.
And were y' as good as George A Green,
I shall make bold to turn agen ;
Nor am I doubtful of the issue
In a just quarrel and mine is so.

As for the history it self, its very easie to observe by its phraseology and manner of writing, that 'tis not very modern, but that the manuscript must at least have been as old as the days of Queen Elizabeth. Its lodged in a public library in the city of London, from which a copy was taken, and is now made publick, with no other alteration, than such as were necessary to make the sense tolerably congruous.

We do not pretend to vouch for the truth of this history in every particular: it was the practice of the times, upon such occasions as these, to imbellish truth (as the writers imagined) with some of their inventions, but it not being easie at such a distance nicely to distinguish the one from the other, we chose rather to put it entire into the hands of the gentle reader, to whose censure and determination we do wholly submit it.

However, to pleasure him so far as it lay in our power, and to set George forth in as conspicuous a manner as the circumstances of things would admit: we have added several cutts* to the Work, one of which represents the Pindar's person, and the rest the most memorable transactions of his life, especially his Acts of Valour, wherein he excelled, and for which he is justly celebrated to this day, and the publication of this his history is design'd for the perpetuating of his fame to all future generations.

* These Cuts not being deemed sufficiently curious to warrant their being re-engraved have been omitted, with this exception, however, the whole of the manner and matter of the original Edition have been observed. *Ed.*

THE
HISTORY OF GEORGE A GREEN,
PINDAR OF THE TOWN OF
WAKEFIELD, &c.

CHAPTER I.

Of the Parentage and Birth of George A Green ; and of some Accidents that happen'd to him in his Childhood, before he could hardly write Man, which gave great hopes of his farther Strength and Valour,

THAT this history may gain the greater credit and countenance, and not incur the imputation of a vain and fabulous discourse (of which number this age hath already been abused with too many) I thought it the best course, both for the reputation of the work, and the encouragement of the reader, to follow and observe an exact computation of time ; as also, all the series of such circumstances, as are not only known, but very remarkable in our best and most approv'd chronicles.

Thus therefore it followeth :

The reign of Henry the Second of that name, king of England, the son of Geoffrey Plantagenet, earl of Anjou, and Maud the empress, daughter of Henry the First, and younger son to William the Conqueror, began

in the month of October, in the year after our blessed Saviour's Incarnation, 1155, and in the nineteenth year of Lewis the Eighth, king of France. He was a prince of so great valour and courage, that he was often heard to say, That the world was not sufficient to contain or limit a valiant and magnanimous spirit. Neither did his words come much short of his heroical attempts, for he subdued Ireland by the sword, and surpriz'd William king of Scots, in battle, joining and annexing the kingdom unto his own. He comprehended all the land and continent from the south ocean to the north islands of the Orcades, under due principality and government, now spaciouly extending his empires more than any of his progenitors: for not any king of England before his time held so many countries and provinces under their dominion and government: for, besides his own kingdom and crown, of which he was immediate and apparent heir, and unto which he was lineally descended: he had under his rule and command, the entire dukedoms of Normandy, Gascoigne and Guyenne, Anjou and Chinon: besides, he subjected unto him Auvergne; with divers other lands and territories. Moreover, by his wife Eleanor (who had been before divorced from Lewis the Eighth, king of France) he had in dower the Montes Pyrenæi, the Pyrenean mountains that divide France and Spain. He had by this queen a fair and hopeful issue, namely five sons and three daughters. His sons were William, Henry, Richard, Godfrey, and John, of which two only succeeded him in the

kingdom, viz. the third son Richard (after for his invincible courage surnamed Cœur de Lion) and John the younger. The eldest of his daughters was called Maud, who was married unto the duke of Saxony. The second, Eleanor, espoused to the king of Spain. The third, Jane, after wife to William, king of Sicily. This king was very prosperous in the beginning of his reign, but in the latter-end very unfortunate; for, as Gerald the chronicler recordeth of him, he reigned twenty-six years in all worldly prosperity, and to the content of his heart; but the next four years with difficulty and trouble, and the five years after that with infinite vexation and sorrow: but the first combustions that grew in the kingdom, were about the twentieth year of his reign; for his sons being aided by the Scotch king and the two eminent earls of Chester and Lincoln: the cause of taking up arms against their father was, because he had imprison'd his Queen Eleanor, their mother, and kept the fair Rosamond as a Concubine, quite abandoning the bed and company of his lawful wife.

Thus far I have borrow'd of our English annals, the better to illustrate our succeeding history now in hand.

In these civil and domestick tumults, whilst the whole land was in an uproar, the father against the son, and the son oppos'd against the father, the whole land so bewildred in the following and abetting of these two several factions, was disjoin'd: not only peer against peer, and county against county; but, as in all such unnatural and intestine wars it happens, so in this it fell

out that the nephews oppos'd the uncles, brother the brother, and the son the father ; the one supporting the quarrel of the father, the other animating the faction of the rebellious children, as their fancies and affections diversly led them. Amongst those that abetted the insurrection of the princes was one Geoffrey Green, a rich and wealthy farmer of the town of Wakefield, who both with his purse and person assisted them in all their designs. These wars (as Reinolph witnesseth) lasted for the space of two whole years, to the great disturbance of the realm, at the end of which season the king had the better ; for the army of the princes was dispers'd, and the king pursuing his victory, besieged the two earls of Chester and Lincoln, with other great men, in Aurwich castle, and in a short space surpriz'd both it and them. These being thus taken, and the princes his sons fled, the king having quieted and pacified all the tumults within the realm, had now leisure to make enquiry after all such of his subjects, as, quite against their oath and allegiance, had taken up rebellious arms against him. In the list of those names was found this Geoffrey Green, whose life being pardon'd by the king's gracious clemency, yet, by a strict command from his highness, directed to the commissioners, all his goods and lands were seiz'd on as forefalt and confiscate to the crown ; the grief whereof made such a deep impression on him, that he survived not full two months after, leaving behind him one only son, about the age of nine years, heir only to his father's misfortunes ; for he had neither

house of his own to cover him, nor farm, nor cattle, nor goods by which to subsist.

His name was George, and that very A Green of whom our present discourse is form'd. And here I must give you to understand, that he was not (as some vainly have held) a foundling, that is, a forsaken infant, cast out by his unnatural parents, and taken up in his swaddling-cloaths ; and that those charitable people that first lighted on him, very much doubting of his baptism, caused him to be christned, whence the name of George was given him, and surnam'd of Green, of the town which is called Wakefield, on a green, and so brought up and educated by the common charity. Neither was he filius populi, a bastard, as some have ignominiously suggested, designing thereby to sully his worth by the infamy of his birth ; but he was the legitimate issue of an honest and substantial farmer of good means and ability, and of an unblemish'd reputation, well thought of by his neighbours, respectfully spoken of by the country, a man free from blemish or unjust taxation, until either over-soon reduced to embrace innovation, or over-much inclining to the immature succession, he fell into the fore-nam'd disaster.

As I have clear'd his birth from bastardy, so my design is to free his bringing-up from calumny ; for, according to the ability of his father, he was train'd up in the school of Wakefield to read and to write ; for in those days few farmers sons aim'd at any higher learning. Pregnant he was, and of a good capacity, but

especially excelling in strength those that exceeded him in years. He in all exercises of the body, especially when any trial was to be made by blows and buffets, had always the mastery, insomuch that his fellow scholars gave him the name of captain of the school. His means now failing, by reason of his father's poverty and untimely decease, his master began to carry a more hard and severe hand over him than before ; and because he found him to be as friendless as fatherless, began too much to insult on his poverty, by chastening and beating him on the least, or, perhaps, no occasion ; all which his great spirit (tho' yet a child) being not able to endure he purposed with himself, upon the next fit occasion, to put some pretty revenge or other upon his master, and so for ever after to quit the school. Opportunity being after presented to his wishes, it happen'd, that his master for some slight cause was wroth, calling him Cocain, and bid him prepare himself for the lash, for he must be whipp'd without all peradventures. George, at this terrible summons, perceiving his master's threatenings, and the rod menacing, he falls down on his knees with *quæso præceptor* (for he had so much Latin) in his mouth, to beg pardon, as loth upon so sudden a condemnation, to go to execution ; but after many threats on the one side, and many entreaties on the other, and none present that durst interpose themselves to mediate betwixt them, George perceiving his master to be inexorable, and neither to be moved with prayers nor tears, and remembring himself of his former deter-

mination, whilst the pedagogue was calling out one to horse him, George suddenly thrust his head betwixt his master's legs, and holding them fast, and heaving with all his strength, he found he could move his heels above his own head; so with a sudden heave he cast him off from his shoulders with such a tumbling quait, as we call a back somerset, and left him (not much considering whether his head or neck came first to the ground) lying flat upon his back, and half dead, in the midst of the school, which then stood open, and out of which he ran, with an intent and vow to himself never to come within that place after. Thus George in the marring of a scholar had almost spoil'd a schoolmaster; for the poor man, now not so cholerick as before, from threatening, began to entreat his scholars for help to get him upon his legs again, and employ'd others to run home, to get him some aqua vitæ, and others to lead him to his seat, sometimes complaining of a pain in his head, then of a creek in his neck, then of his back, and at other times of his bones; but his scholar George was gone, and having made so bold with his legs, purposed never more to come within his fingers. This accident tho' it distasted some, yet it pleas'd others, especially such as were indulgent over their children, to whom this pedant had been too harsh and tyrannous; but gave occasion to all to speak George's strength and boldness, who being so young, durst adventure to cope with this tyrant, whose very looks made all the rest of his school-fellows quake and tremble. Many other such masteries,

he proved with such as equall'd him in years, and many with those that had out-gone him in time ; but in all his exercises he still came off with the best success. He was naturally of so honest a temper, and so gentle a behaviour, that he rather attracted love and amity, than emulation or enemies. But I have hitherto spoken of him as a child ; I must now entreat you to imagine so many years past over his head, till he was grown full man, that his understanding, was of better capacity, and his body of more able validity, the first to apprehend the other to undertake. These things duly consider'd here, I propose to conclude the first partition of this treatise, and prepare myself to go on with the second.

CHAP. II.

How George A Green was perswaded by a friend of his to go to an Astronomer, or Fortune-Teller, to cast his nativity.

GEORGE now growing to twenty years of age, and in regard both of his strength and stature, perswading himself he might write full man, began to consider what course of life he had best to take : and in this meditation meeting with a friend of his, and of his long acquaintance much familiar discourse was interchanged betwixt them : at length they fell upon the former argument. To the profession of a soldier he had a very great inclination, but he was frustrated in that ; for there was no employment for such persons, be-

cause there was a general peace and a cessation of civil arms throughout the kingdom. A serving man he did not much affect, because he held it too servile a life : and besides, he remembred himself of the two English proverbs, " That service was no herritage ;" and again, " That an old serving-man made a young beggar." He was in no hopes to prove a scholar, because (as you have heard before) he had formerly too early broke up school. A trade he did not affect, because he could not endure to be imprison'd seven years in a shop to cry, What do you lack ? Much conference to the former purpose past betwixt them : at length his friend told him, That some twelve miles distant from thence, at Hallifax, lived a south-sayer, or fortune-teller, one that cast figures, and could predict from mens nativities what should happen to them : and so he wished him to be advised by him, and accordingly as he should calculate of his birth, so to frame the course of his life. His friend so far prevail'd with him, that they purposed to undertake this journey ; and the rather George was perswaded to the motion, because he had heard from the mouths of others, that this man was a great artist, and got much money by his practice. The time was appointed, and at that time they went ; but coming somewhat late into the town, they thought it not best to trouble the artist that night, but rather to make proof of him early in the morning fresh and fasting. Merrily they supp'd together, with some good fellows of their acquaintance, to whom they conceal'd the principal

cause of their coming to the town ; but got up betimes, and understanding then, that ten groats was the ordinary price due to the cunning man, George had the fee in his hand ready for his counsel ; and being directed to his house, it fortun'd thus : just at the same time he had almost open'd the door, he found that some slovenly fellow or other had laid a beastly and stinking load upon the threshold ; at which sight the cunning man seem'd to be out of patience, and amongst other language utter'd in his great fury as followeth, and spoke to this effect : Well (quoth he) if I could but imagine, or find out by any enquiry what rascal hath put his nasty breech upon me, I would be so revenged on him to make him an example how to use any neighbour's door in that beastly manner hereafter. This was no sooner spoke, but he clapp'd too the door, and in he went ; when, saith his friend, Come, George, let's follow in close, for 'tis ten to one but we shall find him private. But he having another apprehension newly come into his head, told his friend, he should excuse him, for he was sorry he had taken so much pains to so little purpose ; and though he had made him such a fool to lose so much labour, yet he had so much wit left him as to keep his money. His friend demanding of him the reason why he utter'd such speech ; George reply'd, Because I purpose to be as cunning as the cunning man, so as not to part with my money for nothing ; for (saith he) shall I ever believe he can resolve me of things to come, that cannot inform himself of a thing lately past : or that he can satisfie me

in the future course of my life and fortune, that cannot give himself satisfaction who hath this morning play'd the sloven upon his threshold ? No, saith George, let him keep his art unto his own use, and I will reserve my money for my own spending: and so without any further questions, he alter'd his course back to Wakefield, where he arriv'd something wiser than he went thither ; but his friend, as arrant a fool as he was, got first thither.

CHAP. III.

How George A Green was chosen Pindar of the Town of Wakefield: how he carried himself in the place ; and of some other accidents that happen'd unto him.

It happen'd, that soon after this his journey to Hallifax, that the Pindar of the Town of Wakefield died, and though the place was of no great reputation or credit, yet it was of some profit ; and therefore divers of the town, and others of the neighbouring villages made suit for it ; but George, being well belov'd, partly for his father's sake, but chiefly for his own temper and genteel carriage, (being a town-born child, and destitute both of means and employment) the most voices went, that though he made no suit for it, either by his own mouth or the mediation of friends, that it should be mention'd unto him, if he would think fit to accept of so poor a favour, which proceeded from their general love, till a better fortune ; and so was told, he should be possess'd

of it, notwithstanding all competitors. George being much pleased with such voluntary love, and being naturally in himself a hater of all ingratitude, besides that he was without a calling, and had no dependance on any man, he revolved within himself, that it was much better, and more commendable, to enter and undertake a mean profession, than none at all, and therefore he return'd the townsmen a thankful answer of acceptance, modestly excusing his own demerit ; but with this condition, that in regard he understood there were many suiters for the place that seem'd more able and expert than himself, and withal, that it was an office that requir'd a strong and sufficient man, that must undergo many enterprizes without being overtopt and baffled. He, for his own part, desired rather that merit might carry it than favour ; and therefore his request was, that all such as had interested themselves in the suit might appear next holiday, after even-song, upon the green of the town, to have a bout or two at quarter-staff, which was a weapon most in use in those days ; and to take off all pretence for his being hated or envied in it. The motion was so necessary and just that it could be denied by none, but accepted of all, and he was much commended for proposing it, and the rather, because thereby the townsmen were acquitted from seeming inclin'd more to one party than another. Upon this the day was appointed, and summons sent speedily, not only to the neighbouring villages, but proclaim'd in all the market towns in the county (without exception) that

whosoever would make their personal appearance, as well strangers as others, should not only have fair admittance, but he that could maintain his claim by staff and law, should not only have their general voice, but have the possession of the Pindarship during his life, &c. When the time came, a great confluence of people appear'd, for the country came in from all parts and corners, and many champions entred within the lists. Many a stout tinker in the country was seen with his long staff upon his neck (for lances belong'd only to horsemen) and not one but would venture his budget in the quarrel. George was their champion and challenger; the rest were defendants. The prize proposed for the conqueror was the Pindarship. Neither bakers nor butchers were exempted: nay, even fencers were not excluded, for the challenge was general. Many that made no pretensions to the place, came in for their renown, and to shew their valour. The champion stands forth, a defendant appears, the charge is given, not by trumpets, but bag-pipes, as the seers-men go to war. As one was struck down, another started up in his place. I can compare George in this war most properly to Hercules fighting with Hydra; for as one is vanquished, there appears in his place two or three. Fewer staves have been broken at a tilt on a coronation day, than quarter staves at this trial of strength. Twenty of their heads which stood right upon their shoulders, in less than an hour's space stoop'd lower than their knees: yet in him there was neither seen weakness nor weariness.

ness, but he appear'd as fresh as when he first began the encounter. Others, who came with a resolution to make proof of their valour, learn'd by other mens harms how to beware, and seeing so many able and stout fellows foil'd, forbore to come into the lists: for, seeing crack'd crowns pass so currant, they thought it the safest way to sleep in a whole skin. In short, he staid there so long to oppose, that none appear'd to resist: so that the place (with the common consent of the whole country) was conferr'd on him, which, they all acknowledged, came to him not by favour, but his merit and pure desert; and as he attracted the hearts of all men, so questionless his valour being accompany'd with his fair and genteel caariage, (as before hinted) interested him in the bosoms of many women, especially one fair damosel, whose name was Beatrice, the only daughter and heir of a rich justice of the peace, whose name was Grymes, a man of a fair revenue, and of no mean reputation in the country; who being the prime beauty in all those northern parts, was soon espied by George at such interims of breathing, wherein having foil'd one champion, he cast his eyes about till he perceiv'd another to appear before him. She perceiving him at all opportunities to cast a loving look at her, fail'd not to meet his eyes with the like interview of amorous glances: and according to the proverb, "Who ever lov'd that lov'd not at first sight?" So it may be said of George and Beatrice: for ever after that time there was such an impression of cordial and entire love

betwixt them, as never could be raiz'd out by any prevention or disaster whatsoever, as shall further appear in the sequel. But here we shall leave our new made Pindar, with a loud applause of all the lusty lads of the town and country, carry'd home to his lodgings; and his sweet-heart attended by the country maidens (according to her degree) unto her father's house, some two miles off, who had rather (would modesty have permitted her) have made a shorter journey of it, and born him company that night in the town, as he would likewise have been willing to have made a longer journey, and have usher'd her home; but neither of these could have their desire with any convenience. Part they must, and part they did, meeting as near in their thoughts, as they were divided far in their bodies, where I must now likewise take leave of them for a little time, to inform you what happen'd in the mean time in the nation.

CHAPTER IV.

Of a great Insurrection in the Kingdom, made by the Earl of Kendall, and his Accomplices, by Reason of a vain Prophecy: and how George A Green demeaned himself towards the Rebels, &c.

RICHARD the First, son of Henry the Second, after his father's decease, began his reign in the month of July, in the year of grace, one thousand one hundred four-score and nine, who having established and settled Normandy, and ordered his affairs in England, after he

had released his mother Eleanor from prison, whom the king his father had kept long in durance, by reason that she was the death of his best beloved Rosamond ; he likewise conferred many honours on his younger brother John, as giving him the provinces of Nottingham, Devonshire and Cornwall, and creating him earl of Lancaster, and moreover had marry'd him to the earl of Gloucester's sole daughter, by which that earldom came shortly into his hands. I say, Richard having settled his affairs, he prepar'd for a voyage to the Holy Land, in conjunction with Philip the Second, then king of France. During his absence he constituted the bishop of Ely, then chancellor of England, vicegerent of the kingdom. This bishop being on the one side covetous, and by many unjust impositions oppressing the nation, and the king's brother ambitious on the other, as presuming much upon his royal birth, and his great possessions, some persons fomented great factions and combinations against the tyranizing prelate ; so that all things grew out of frame and order ; and great distractions ensued ; nay, a third ulcer, worse than the former, broke into open rebellion, namely, an insurrection was raised by the earl of Kendal, with divers of his adherents, as, the Lord Bouteil, Sir Gilbert Armestrong, and others, These having gather'd an army of some twenty thousand malecontents, made publick proclamation, that they came into the field for no other cause, but to purchase their country-mens liberty, and to free them from the great and insufferable oppression which they then

liv'd under, by the prince and prelate. This drew to the earl many followers for the present, so that he seem'd to have got together a very potent army. But the main reason of this rebellion was, that when the earl was but a child, a wizard had prophesy'd of him, That Richard and he should meet in London, and the king should there vail his bonnet unto him : and this prediction of the south-sayer prov'd afterwards to be true, but not as he vainly had expounded it. The earl having led his army into the north, struck a great terror into all those honest subjects, that tender'd their allegiance to their absent king and sovereign, and wish'd well to the good of the commonwealth, and the safety of the kingdom ; yet many were forced through fear to supply his men with necessary provisions, lest otherwise they should have made spoil and havock of all they had. Now, the earl being for some time destitute of many things that are useful and commodious for an army, and encamping some five miles from the town of Wakefield, the three confederates drew a commission, and having sign'd it with their own seals sent it by one Mannering, a servant of the earl's, to the bailiff and towns-men of Wakefield, requiring seemingly, by way of intreaty, to send unto his host such a quantity of provision, of corn and cattle, with other necessities (of which he was then in great want,) and withal, such a sum of money as he demanded for the payment of so many soldiers, to which this Mannering was to perswade them by all fair means possible : but, if they should deny his request, he

was to threaten them with fire and sword, with all the violence that could be suggested to them. The news of this commission coming to their knowledge, the bailiff sent abroad to the neighbouring justices, as, to Mr. Grymes, and others ; so that he and his brethren appointed to give them a meeting in the town-house, where many of the Commons were to be present, and, amongst others, George A Green purposed to be there, to hear what would become of the business. The summons being made, the assembly met, and the messenger appear'd, show'd his warrant, and, according to his orders, told them what great conveniencies would grow in supplying the army, and withal entreated from the lords their love and favour. The bailiff and the justices were loth, it being contrary to their allegiance, to grant their request : yet they were fearful withal peremptorily to deny it, and stood wavering long and debating amongst themselves what they had best do for their own safeties ; which Mannering seeing, without doing any reverence at all unto the bench, he began to alter his phrases, and changed the copy of his countenance, first taunting and deriding their faint-hearted cowardize, and afterward threatning them, that if they gave not present satisfaction to his demand, the army would instantly remove, make havock and spoil of their goods and chattels, ravish their daughters, and deflower their wives before their faces, and make a bonfire of the town, to the terrifying of others, whose insolence durst oppose the earl his master's commission. At this haughty and insufferable

menaces, whilst the bench sate quaking, George presseth forward in the face of the court, and desireth, by the favour of the bench, to have the liberty, according to his plain and weak understanding, to give the messenger an answer, which being granted him, he boldly stept up to him, and demanded his name, who made him answer, that his name was Mannering. Mannering (saith he;) that name was ill bestow'd on one who can so forget all manners, as to stand cover'd before a bench, upon which the majesty of his sovereign was represented: which manners (saith he) since thou wantest, I will teach thee: and withal, first snatching his bonnet from his head, trod upon it, then spurn'd it before him. At which the other, being intriged, ask'd him, How he durst to offer that violence to one, who brought so strong a commission? Your commission (saith George) I cry your mercy, sir: and withal, desired the favour of the bench, that he might have the liberty to peruse it, which being granted, I marry (saith he, having read it) I cannot chuse but submit my self to this authority: and making an offer, as if he meant to kiss it, tore it in pieces. Mannering seeing this, began to stamp, stare and swear; but George taking him fast by the collar, so shook him, as if he had purposed to have made all his bones loose in his skin, and drawing his dagger, and pointing it to his bosom, told him, He had devised physick to purge his cholerick blood; and gathering up the three seals, told him, It was these three pills which he must instantly take and swallow, and never more expect to

return to his master : nor did he leave him, or take the dagger from his breast, till he had seen it down, and afterwards, when he had perceiv'd that they had almost choak'd him, he call'd for a bottle of ale, and said these words : It shall never be said, that a messenger shall be sent by such great persons to the town of Wakefield, and that none would be so kind as to make him drink, therefore here (saith he) Mannering, is a health to the confusion of the traitor thy master, and all his rebellious army, and pledge it me without evasion or delay, or I vow by the allegiance which I owe to my prince and sovereign, that thou hast drank thy last already. Mannering, seeing there was no remedy, and feeling the wax still sticking in his throat, drank it off supernaculum ; which the other seeing, Now (saith he) commend me to thy master, and the rest, and tell them, one George A Green, no better man than the Pindar of the town of Wakefield, who tho' I have torn their commission, yet I have sent them their seals safe back again by their servant. Whatsoever Mannering thought, little was he heard to speak, but went away muttering the devil's Pater Noster, and so left them. Every body commended the resolution of George, and, by his sole encouragement, purposed henceforward to oppose themselves against the insurrection of the rebels.

CHAP. V.

How George wrote a letter to fair Beatrice, and of the success thereof: how it was deliver'd to her; With other accidents pertinent to the history.

THE news of this late exploit done by the Pindar was related at home by Justice Grymes to Beatrice, his fair daughter, which he flourish'd over with such an extraordinary commendation of his spirit and valour, that it added fresh flames to the fire, which was already kindled in her breast; neither could any thing delight her more, than to hear him commended much, and praised often; and nothing troubled her so much, as that modesty would not suffer her to lay hold of an opportunity to acquaint him with her affection. George, on the contrary was as much perplex'd with the consideration of the difference of their births and estates; she an esquire's daughter, and he but the son of a yeoman: Her father a justice of the peace, his a farmer: she the heir to fair estate, and he born to so mean a fortune: she so rich, and he so poor. These discouragements drove him into so deep a melancholy, that nothing could cheer and comfort him: But then, when he again consider'd with himself, that all vertuous lovers still respected the person more than place, and still preferr'd the man above his means; and moreover, that he that fear'd not the face of a man, should not be daunted at the frowns of a wo-

man; that faint heart never compass'd fair lady ; and, that all contracts were first confirm'd in heaven before they could be concluded upon earth. Many of these conceptions, I say, continuing, he begins to devise by what means he might acquaint her with his affection ; and knowing it was a commendable ambition, rather to aim high than look low, and to raise his fortune than depress them, he thought to make proof, proposing to himself, that the worst that could befall him could not be death, but the most a denial ; and having read, that it is a kind of ingratitude for one to be angry or incensed against any one for loving and honouring them, he therefore took pen in hand (as one loth to offend) and thought cautiously rather to express his own passions, than presumptuously to urge or perswade her affections (especially upon no acquaintance) and being a pretty poet, such as those times afforded, he wrote this fancy.

What art thou, beauty, not commended?
Or what is state, if not attended?
Or gold in ground
If sought not found?

What's favour in a prince offended?
All like smoak and bubbles prove?
And so it happens to my love.

What are pleasures, if untry'd?
Or what great suits, if deny'd?
Or what's to thee,
That cannot see?

Phœbus in his height of pride,
Fair may be, and yet we do annoy
That hope, yet helpless to enjoy.

What wealth, unless we may possess it?
Or virtue, if none dare profess it?
Even so it fares
With these my cares.

Then what my mistress, who can guess it?
Save you that only know it:
I have a heart, but dare not owe it.

In discovering his meaning thus overtly, he was afraid lest it might, perhaps, breed some distaste, yet it could not beget any anger; besides, if it came in question, he might thus excuse it: Cats may look upon kings. The air is free for all men to breathe in: And, no man is barr'd the privilege to gaze upon the sun, because it shines freely upon all things. This might express he lov'd her, which she could bar no man from doing, and yet never be any injury unto her, and therefore he could incur no just taxation. Being animated with these hopes, he subscrib'd his name, seal'd it, and gave it to his boy, giving him a great charge in the delivery, and to watch some opportunity, when neither suspicious ears or eyes were about her, to shelter it in her private walk, or way, where she might be sure to find it, and take it up. The boy proved an apt scholar, and did as his master had tutor'd him: so good success he had, that the letter came safely to her hands. Upon her

perusing it over and over, I may very well say, that never came tidings unto her of more comfort, to her (before) sad and discontented heart. And now all her study and care was how to return him a pleasing and sudden answer ; for well she consider'd, that in these affairs there was no benefit in appearing coy, or delaying of time, in regard she had many suiters propos'd unto her father, of equal means and fortunes, who were daily importunate for answer, and hourly solicited her by letters, and to all which she gave fair answers and seeming entertainment, but with a settled and constant resolution to run her fortune with her best belov'd George, and in this resolution she retired her self into her chamber, and having shut the door, took pen, ink and paper, and writ to him as followeth.

Prove but as constant as th'art bold,
Thy suit shall never be controul'd.
I am not to be bought or sold
For wealth or treasure.

Let suiters fret, and fathers rage,
Then keep me in an iron cage ;
Yet I myself to thee engage ;
I'll use my Pleasure.

Then be no longer discontent :
I write no more than what is meant.
With this my hand my heart is sent.
Be't thine endeavour,

To lay some plot how we may meet,
And lovingly each other greet
With amorous words and kisses sweet.
Thine for ever.

To this she subscrib'd her name, not standing to examine it, whether any thing had pass'd her hand rashly or unadvisedly : so great was her love, and so much her fear, either of discovery or prevention. She folded it up, and wore it in her bosom, but destitute of any safe means how it should be privately convey'd without any suspicion into his hands. In this distraction, walking one morning at some distance from her father's house, she espied William, the Pindar's boy, not far from the gate, whom she presently knew to be the same who had dropp'd the first letter, and imagin'd, that his lingering there was to find, if he could learn what success his master's suit had : so that perceiving the coast clear, and that no eyes were fix'd upon her, she let fall her letter in the boy's sight, and, as if she had lost it by chance, retired herself towards the house without any notice thereof, or more speaking ; yet warily casting her eye on one side, to see whether he took it up or no. The lad, as crafty as she was cunning, took it up, and finding by the superscription, that it was not his master's hand, was glad within himself, as hoping he should now be the messenger of good news and tidings to his master, he presently runs home with it : but never was man more extacy'd than George, when he had open'd

the letter and read it; in which profound contemplation I must leave him to speak of the Rebels, who hearing of the fame of fair Beatrice's beauty, the sole clear and refulgent star of the north, the earl, the Lord Bonville, and Sir Gilbert, commanding then the country, had left the charge of the army to such as they best trusted, and invited themselves to the House of Justice Grymes who, tho' much against his will, was forced to give them a seeming welcome, and liberty to court his daughter : But she being constant in her former resolution, put them off with slight answers, resolving within herself to humour all, but to give satisfaction unto none of them. Whilst they were thus revelling, Mannering, having miss'd them in the army, brought to them that unpleasant answer from the town of Wakefield, relating to them every particular circumstance, and told how, not only he, but even they themselves were baffled by a peasant, one George A. Green, who had not only torn their commission, but made him swallow their Seals. 'Tis no wonder they were much incensed at this affront, in regard it proceeded from a man of such low condition, neither wanted they any thing in murmuring, by reason of his former disgrace, to incite them to revenge. That night they spent in feasting, and courting fair Beatrice, the earl promising to make her a countess at least : but on the morrow they took their leave of Mr. Grymes and his fair daughter, and coming to the army, they began to lay their heads together to consult how to take the Pindar, in whose only valour (by Manner-

ing's Report) the whole might and strength of the town consisted. Whilst these things were thus debating, Sir William Musgrave, a grave old knight, associated with his son Cuddy Musgrave, a very valiant and succesful gentleman, had raised a small power in the absent king's behalf, who, tho' fewer in number, waited an opportunity, upon the least advantage, to fall upon the rebels: but they were so strongly encamp'd, that he could not yet do it without great hazard to his person and people; in which distraction I must leave him for a while, to speak of other adventures pertinent to the story.

CHAP. VI.

How George A Green surpriz'd a spy, who was sent by the rebels to betray Sandon Castle, of which Sir William Musgrave and his son Cuddy had the keeping; and of sundry other passages.

BEFORE what happen'd in Wakefield betwixt George and Mannering, the Earl of Kendal had hired a spy, and given him good store of money in his purse, to make tryal if either by favour or reward he could corrupt any man to betray Sandon Castle to him, in which the Musgraves lay with a very small garrison, and had fortified it against any assault which could be made by the rebels. This fellow strolling abroad, chanced to meet with George, whom he knew not, or ever had seen before, and entring into discourse, George perceiving that he was of the Baron's faction, sooth'd him up with

smooth language, and began to commend the enterprize, as though it had a pretence of good to the kingdom and liberty of the commonwealth, and screw'd himself first so far into the other's bosom, as that he plainly told him what his purpose was, and withal shew'd him gold very plentiful, which he said, should be his that could devise any plot to bring this stratagem to pass. The Pindar, glad of this occasion, tells him, he would undertake for such a sum to bring him safe into the castle, in the dead of night, that he might at his pleasure set open the gates, and let in as many of his confederates as he pleased. George presently lays the plot, which was agreed to by the other, and thus it was: I am very well known to all that are in the castle, (says he) and am often sent unto them to carry them provisions. Now I would wish you to enter it in the close of the evening. I will take you on my back, (as if you were a burthen of corn, or some other commodity, such as I usually bring thither) and put you with in some corner of the castle that is least suspected: Upon which, in the dead of night, when you think all things very secure, you may get out, and so opening the gates, let all your friends and accomplices in. This was deliver'd with so sober and serious a countenance, that the sack was instantly provided, and he put into it; which was no sooner done, but George lifts it up upon his shoulders, and nimbly carries Sir Troth in ken of the castle, when taking a slering-cord out of his pocket, with which he used to lead strays to the pound, fastned it to the mouth of the sack, and coming to the tree just

before the castle-green, and hoisting him more than twice his height from the ground, fasten'd the cord, and leaving him betwixt heaven and earth tottering in the air, bids him farewell, and at his parting left this inscription pinn'd upon his breast.

Whoever next shall pass this way,
A little I entreat to stay ;
And if he'll dain to look so high,
He'll see a most notorious spy.
This sack too I wou'd have you think,
More wholesome is to hang than drink ;
Because in this a plot was laid,
By which you all had been betray'd.
Use him according to your skill,
Who sought this night your blood to spill,
If who did this you shall enquire,
'Twas George A Green did hang him there.

George having done this, trudg'd as fast as he could towards the town, to look to his charge ; he was scarce gone out of sight, when Sir William Musgrave and his son Cuddy, walking about to take the evening air, Cuddy by chance casting his eye, espies this strange wonder, and showing it to his father, they drew nearer to be satisfied of the novelty, and having read the bill upon his breast, they might easily perceive, as the proverb has it, What Pig was in the Poke, and what commodity the sack contain'd, when presently cutting him down, with

such haste, that he had almost broke his neck with the fall, they open'd the sack, and found the traitor ; upon which they sent him to the castle, where they made him confess all the purposes of the rebels, and at the same time much commending George A Green for his witty conceit, as also for his truth and fidelity to his prince and sovereign. But now, for variety's sake, I will break off this discourse, tho' somewhat abruptly, and speak a word or two of Robin Hood, his maid Mariana, and his bold yeoman, who at this time kept revel rout, in the forest of Sheerwood, &c.

CHAP. VII.

Of Robin Hood, Maid Mariana, and the bold Yeoman ; and how envying the fame of George A Green, and the rumour of the beauty of fair Beatrice, Mariana could not be in quiet, till it could be tried whether Robin or George were the valientest, or she and Beatrice the fairest.

My purpose is not to trouble the reader with any tedious discourse, by telling of you, how Robin Hood was first earl of Huntington, and for his vertue suppress'd and turn'd out of all his possessions by the covetous bishop before spoken of, and the person whom the king at his departure to prosecute the wars, had made governor of the kingdom ; nor how she that stiled herself maid Mariana, was Matilda, daughter to the Lord Fitz-

Walters, and having discovered the royal affections of Prince John, retired herself into the forest of Sherwood, for the true love and affection she bore unto her best beloved Robin ; which history would require a small volume of itself, but I only propose to speak so much of them in brief, as is pertinent to the history now in hand. I entreat you to take it into remembrance, that George A Green for his strength and valour, and Beatrice, the daughter of Justice Grymes, for her beauty, were the most famous in all those northern parts : that Robin and his Mariana, before unparallel'd, were now scarce spoken of, insomuch, that an ambitious emulation was the cause that Robin and George, Mariana and Beatrice afterwards grew into great quarrel and acquaintance, as shall be made more manifest by the sequel. It was their custom still, when he and his yeomen went to the chase, that they all in their green, being arm'd with good yew bows, and every one of them a sheaf of arrows hanging at their girdles, came early in the morning to the place where he lay, to call him up, with a song to this purpose :

Now wend we together, my merry men all,
Unto the green wood side-a,
And there to kill a buck, or a doe,
Let your cunnings all be try'd-a.
No man may compare with Robin Hood,
With Robin Hood's Slathbatch and John-a,
The like was never, nor never shall be,
In case that they were gone-a.

Then let us not linger away the time,
But hie to the merry green wood-a,
And there to strike down a buck or a doe,
For my master Robin Hood-a:
For my master Robin Hood-a.

With this musick of well tun'd voices, it was their custom to salute him, and after attend him to the game. But it happen'd, that having had for the space of four or five days together very rainy and tempestuous weather, Mariana all this time was in a deep and sudden melancholy, the cause whereof he could by no means wrest from her, though he had labour'd it by all fair means and much entreaty; insomuch, that he began to be a little jealous of her love, as falling off from him, and inclining to Prince John, who never left off soliciting her by messengers and letters, with sundry gifts and presents: but having had sufficient proof of her faith and constancy, he then began again to blame and chide his diffidence and mistrust, and attribute her sadness and melancholy to the gloomy, unseasonable and tempestuous weather, which might easily be the cause of that her indisposition. To expel this (for nothing could be more grievous unto him than to behold her sad) he attiring one of his pages in the habit of a wood nymph, and having provided a curious and costly mantle, wrought in divers colours, he by him presented it unto her as she was sitting solitary, with great reverence, with this song, a sweet and delicate consort of musick being placed behind her unseen, who with their soft strains thus began:

Beauty's rose and vertue's look,
Angel's mind and mortal's book,
Both to men and angels dear.

Oh! thou fairest on the earth,
Heaven did smile in your first birth,
And since the days have been most clear.

Only poor St. Swithin now
Doth fear you blame his cloudy brow:
But that your saint devoutly swears,
It is but a tradition vain,
That his much weeping causeth rain:
For saints in heaven can shed no tears.

But this he says, that to the feast
Comes Iris an unwelcome guest,
In her moist robe of colours gay.
And when she comes, she ever stays
For the full space of forty days,
And, more or less, rains every day.

But this good saint, when once he knew
This rain was like to fall on you,
(If saints cou'd weep) he wept as much,
As when you did the lady lead,
That did on burning iron tread;
To virgins his respect is such.

He gently then bid Iris go
Unto th' Antipodes below;
But she for this more sullen grew.

When he saw this with angry look,
From her this rainy robe he took,
Which here he doth present to you.

It's fit with you it shou'd abide,
As men's great wonder, vertue's pride:
Yet if it rains still as before,
St. Swithin prays that you would guess,
That Iris doth more robes possess,
And that you wou'd blame him no more.

The song was no sooner ended, when that Robin appear'd, who in the stead of friendly thanks and courteous salutation, now drew these words from her, "I may wonder, sir, that you can be so stupid and gross to sooth up your self, or to flatter me, to call me the pride of nature and wonder of mankind, when both our lustres are so suddenly eclipsed. Within these few months, who so famous for magnanimity and valour as Robin Hood? And who more renowned for chastity and beauty, than his Mariana? who are now scarce thought on, much less spoken of at all. Are not all the mouths of the multitude only fill'd with the brave deeds, valiant acts and exploits perform'd by George A. Green, the famous Pindar of Wakefield; and of the refulgent sun of the north, fair Beatrice, daughter of old Grymes of the north, and both preferr'd before an earl, and I the daughter of an earl; whereas the Pindar is but a Yeoman, and she the child of a mean gentleman; and yet

these two very far exceed us in the public voice of the kingdom. Now, can you blame me to be struck into this deep melancholy, hearing of them such loud acclamations abroad, and of ourselves scarce any rumour or report at all?" When she had thus freely utter'd her thoughts, Robin on his part, commended her noble emulation, and demanded of her what in this case was fittest to be done. To whom she reply'd, "That as two suns could not shine in one element, neither could two unparalleled beauties be refulgent in one country, without contending which should have the priority:" then farther counsell'd him, that for both their honours, they should travel as far as Wakefield, where he should try masteries with George which was the better man, and she to show herself unto Beatrice, upon which true judgment might pass which was the fairest woman. Robin, than whom a more undaunted and bolder spirit was not known to breath in that age, was not a little pleased to hear, that that was the only cause of her discontent, when taking her by the hand, and raising her from the ground, he bad her be of good cheer, for before that month was expired she should be lady of her wishes; and having seal'd this with a sweet kiss, he gave instantly order for his journey; but privately, lest being taken from his guard of archers (he being outlaw'd) it might prove some danger to his person. He therefore selected out of the rest only three of the stoutest amongst his crew, namely, Slathbatch, Little John, and the Fryar, for

his attendants, and these were to have the charge of his fair Mariana in the journey, in pursuing which I leave them for the present, the success whereof you shall have more at large hereafter.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Earl of Kendal and the Lord Bonville laid an ambush to betray George A. Green, and the success thereof: how he prevented the earl's policy, and what happen'd thereupon.

As the name of George grew greater and greater, so the displeasure of the rebels was increased against him more and more, especially for those two merry affronts, the one against Mannering, the other against their spy, of whose surprisal they had lately got intelligence, and therefore thought to defer their revenge no longer: wherefore they having placed a strong ambush, thought they had him fast: for the earl, Bonville, and Mannering, thinking to lay a bait for him, which he could not chuse but be nibbling at, being well mounted, broke down a strong fence, and put in their horses to feed in the corn. George, whose careful eye was ever watchful over his business, soon espied them, and call'd his boy, commanding him to drive them to the pound. These disguised persons ask'd him what he meant to do with their horses? Whether he would steal them before their faces? and began to offer the lad violence; which George perceiving, and as yet not knowing them, said,

"It was base and discourteous in gentlemen, such as they seem'd to be to do an injury in that nature, and then to maintain it by being obstinate in it." To which the earl answer'd, "That these belong'd to him, and were put into the corn to feed in despite of him, or who should say nay." The Pindar seeing no more to appear, thought that their great words should not so carry it away, and told them in plain terms what a forfeit they had made, and what amends they should make, or else as they rode on horse-back thither, they should go on foot home; and then he swore (by no be-garrs,) but by the life of good king Richard, he would see it perform'd. The earl hearing him name the king, told him, "That he was but a base groom and peasant, and had affronted one, that ere long would be king Richard's better." The word was no sooner from his lips, but George who could not endure such indignity breath'd against his sovereign, struck him with his staff a sound blow betwixt his neck and shoulders, telling him "that he ly'd like a traitor, and he would make it good upon his carcass." At which Mannering stepping forth told him, "That he was a villain, and had struck an earl;" who answer'd him with a word and a blow, "That as before he had unseal'd his commission, so now he would sign him a pass-port into another world," and withal laid him at his foot. The Lord Bonville seeing this, gave the watch-word to the men in ambush, which were about some forty in number, who encompass'd him round: which George seeing, he began to apprehend, that whenever force was near the foil, the surest recourse

was to policy, and thereupon craved a parley, which was obtain'd, and George began as followeth: "I wonder, sir, that you, being a nobleman, an earl, and, which is more, the general of so puissant an army, will be so injurious to your power, as to assault and circumvent a poor single man, and of no renown and reputation, with such unequal odds. What have I done more to your person abusing my king, than you would have expected from your peasant Mannering, if he had heard your honour reviled and abused? If you expect from him the duty of a peasant, will you deny me, or blame me in the same duty to my king? Besides, my lord, if you can make it appear, that your cause is just, and your undertakings for the good and benefit of the commonwealth, I shall be glad to follow you, and to draw my sword in your quarrel." He was about to proceed, when Bonvile taking the earl aside, persuaded him to take his friendly offer, making no question, but if they could insinuate him into their faction, he might persuade others, but especially the town of Wakefield to come under their peaceable obedience. This the earl approving, he spoke to him after this manner: "Thy submission and apology, which thou hast so boldly utter'd, hath taken off my spleen, and mediated with me for thy person and pardon: and thereupon commanding his ambuscade to their camp, he thus proceeded: "My rising in arms is to suppress the insolencies of a proud prince and an insolent prelate, who have much insulted on the privileges and liberties of the commonwealth. For the common good I stand ;

but the greatest inducement that drew me into this cause was a wizard's infallible prophecy just at my very birth, who thus calculated my nativity, That king Richard and I should meet in London, and he vail his bonnet to me." To whom the Pindar reply'd, "Ay marry, my lord, you speak to the purpose, indeed, and upon this encouragement I am willing to be but your soldier and servant: but, my lord, might I humbly presume to advise you, the better to justify your proceedings, and for a more compleat notion of your affairs. There is an old reverent man in a cave not far hence, who is a great predictor, and was never known to fail in that speculation. It were not amiss to take his advice and see how nicely his calculation jumps with the former. Please you this night to take some simple provision, such as my poor cottage can afford; my boy shall lead you to his cave, where you may be satisfied of all your doubts and difficulties." The motion was accepted, and concluded on. The morning was much long'd for, and came. The Pindar had provided himself early, and convey'd all things necessary for his purpose into the place last nam'd. The boy conducted them thither, where the Pindar having disguised himself like an old Hermite, such as he had before describ'd, and counterfeiting his voice, told them of all such things as they had before related unto him, at which they wonder'd, calling them particularly by their names, and discover'd unto them the intent of their coming. But suddenly in the midst of their discourse, he throws off his counter-

feit habit, and with his good staff, which never fail'd him at his need, he so bestirr'd himself, that, after some small resistance, having no hole to creep out at, and being without their ambush, he first disarm'd them, then seiz'd them as his prisoners ; and having provided certain officers, with a strong guard, he sent them to the House of Justice Grymes, by him to be safely convey'd to London, to be disposed of by the king, who was now return'd from the holy wars in Palestine.

CHAP. IX.

How George A Green, having seiz'd the arch-rebels, plotted a means how to be possess'd of his most beloved Beatrice, and what afterwards became of Armstrong and the army.

As the Pindar was vigilant and careful for the honour of the king, and the welfare of the publick, so he was not altogether forgetful of his own private affairs, especially of that great affection which he bore to fair Beatrice, betwixt whom at all convenient opportunities there had pass'd entertaining letters, she solemnly protesting to him to let slip no occasion of freeing her self from the close confinement of her father's house, and to fly unto him as her only protection and sanctuary. Hereupon he consider'd in some time a devise to accomplish it, viz. That his boy Willy should put himself into the habit of a seamstress's maid, and furnishing him with lace-bands, and other commodities belonging

to the trade, he should with least suspicion get admittance to her. Fortune so well favour'd the design, that the boy came to shew his wares, when her father was busied in receiving the earl of Kendal and his accomplices, which prevented a too curious enquiry about the lad ; so that he was freely admitted to shew his wares unto his daughter, who was then in her chamber. He was no sooner entred, but shutting the door, he disclosed himself, with the intent of his coming, namely, that Beatrice should put her self into the habit of a seamstress, and muffling her face, as if she had the tooth ach (for in that posture the boy came in) and taking her box and laces, should pass thro' the gates, leaving the boy in her habit to answer her father, and to stand the peril at all adventures. Glad was fair Beatrice of the motion, and with as much speed as willingness put off her own cloaths to put on the other's. Willy was as nimble as she, and was as soon ready to be taken for Mrs. Beatrice, as she for a seamstress's servant ; so that she easily, by holding her handkerchief before her mouth, as troubled with a pain in the teeth, past thro' the people, and got out of the gates unquestion'd, where we leave her on her way towards Wakefield, and Willy in her chamber to answer her escape, and return to Armstrong.

He, in the earl's absence, had the charge of the camp, who thinking himself as secure as the earl had appear'd to be negligent, was set upon in the night by Sir William Musgrave and his son Cuddy, who took him when

he was careless and asleep, by which means they quite discomfited the whole army, and young Cuddy fighting with Armstrong, took him prisoner hand to hand. Glad of such a present to welcome the king home from the holy war, and with such progress, he made preparations to hasten with him to London, and to present him as a pattern of his prowess.

In the interim, to return again to Justice Grymes, the greatest part of his business being over, he stolè privately to see his daughter, in her chamber ; but finding another maid, as he thought, sit sleeping in her habit, he espied a face with which he had not been acquainted ; and thereupon he grew first into amazement, and afterwards, fearing what he suspected to be true, he demanded of the boy Willy, first, what she was ? Then, how she came thither ? Who, with a demure countenance, answer'd, "she was a poor gentlewoman, and came thither upon her legs." Grymes then roughly ask'd him, what was become of his daughter ? "Truly, sir, that seamstress's habit which well becomes your daughter hath been the means to convey her abroad ; but lest her chamber should be found empty, she left me here as a pawn till her return." The justice was still more and more enraged, threatening with all manner of threats to use all the rigour that the law could possibly afford towards punishing him, without he told him the truth.

But before this matter could be fully ended betwixt the justice and Willy, he was call'd down again about

his commonwealth business, which was instantly to be dispatch'd out of hand ; yet still this young impostor run in Grymes's mind, and had too great an impression upon his affections, therefore he lock'd her in his chamber, and took the key along with him, with this resolution, that if by her means he had lost a daughter, (he being a widower) if she could give a good account of her birth and means, she should make him a wife. These and the like meditations somewhat moderated his choler for the present, therefore he made what expedition he could to dispatch off his prisoners, that he might have a more speedy visit in her quarters. But I must leave them there, to return to Robin Hood and his fair Mariana, who had now by this time overcome the greatest part of their journey, and shew what happen'd to them at their meeting with the Pindar and his Beatrice.

CHAP. X.

Of that which happen'd between Robin Hood and his Mariana, and George A Green and his Beatrice ; and how their great animosity was at length reconciled, and of other pertinent accidents.

THE great joy at the meeting of George and his Beatrice was unspeakable, and the rather, because so unexpected. But as there is no day so clear, but there will appear some clouds to eclipse the beauty of the sky, so in their great alacrity and abundance of present content, there was one thing that appear'd troublesome and grievous unto them, namely, the danger Willy had incurr'd for

their sakes. There was no sudden remedy could be used, and so their fears continued, lest the justice, ill inclined and deluded, should use him with the utmost and uncommon rigour and violence. To divert this melancholy, and also to devise the most safe course for his delivery, George one evening took Beatrice by the arm, and willing to shew her the pleasant and delightful fields full of green corn, and that she might take the benefit of the fresh and wholesome air, when on a sudden they espied a company of rude and irregular fellows, (as they thought) break a wide gap thro' an hedge, pluck up the stakes, and without making choice of any path, tread down the corn and make towards them. This injury George's great spirit being not able to suffer, he made as much haste to meet them as he could, tho' Beatrice by many entreaties would have held him back : but the nature of so wilful a wrong prevailing above her entreaties, or the care of his own safety, he took his staff from his neck and bad them stand, and not only to give him an account, but present satisfaction and recompence for the damage they had done. Robin and his company had put off their forest green, and left their bows and arrows behind, and had only weapon'd themselves with good strong quarter-staves, according to the fashion of the country, who appearing to take the Pindar's affront in great scorn, told him, all ways were alike to them, they being travellers ; and when they could make the next way, they saw no reason they had to go about : they had done no damage, or if they had done any, the amends lay in his own hands.

"Marry, and so it doth," answer'd the Pindar, "for I have that in my hand, that shall call you to a dear reckoning; but since you seem to be men furnish'd both with limbs and spirit, if you be such, and not base and effeminate cowards, come not all upon me at once, but one by one, and then have at you, if you were twice as many more;" and the motion pleased them. Slathbatch entreated to be the first, and was the first that was laid at his master's feet. Little John would needs revenge his friend and fellow's quarrel, but dipt his finger in the same sauce. At this Beatrice encouraged, began to laugh; but Mariana, who had all this while observ'd her, did nothing but fret and vex. In the mean time, the fryar had buckled himself up for the third encounter; but George perceiving him to be a churchman by his shaven crown, would have refused him, but the nimble fryar would needs have a bout with George, who answer'd, that since he begg'd a cudgelling at his hands, he was bound in conscience to deny the church nothing, and he would give it him surely; for the fryar was laid soon sprawling on God's earth. Still Beatrice smiled, and still Mariana fretted; and whilst Robin and George were preparing for the combat, for Robin was willing to give him liberty to breath, Mariana stept to Beatrice, and call'd her, Proud minx, and bid her now turn her laughter into tears, for she had a companion coming, who would not only revenge his friends, that were disgraced, but beat, baffle, and disarm her lubberly sweet-heart. Beatrice, who was of an high spirit, and

the more embolden'd by the present valour of her George, came up close to her, and told her again, "thou shalt find as much difference betwixt my champion and thine in manhood, as betwixt the true and natural colour in my cheeks, and thy painted and plaister'd beauty, dawb'd upon in wearing." These words were enough to begin new wars, and they were going together by the ears at the instant, and much ado had the fryar and the rest (now recovered) to keep them asunder. But the two virgins, who would have been actors themselves, were now forced to be spectators of one of the bravest combates, that (I dare say) was ever fought in Wakefield. Long it lasted, and with great difficulty they contested which should be victor: at length, both being tired and weary, (saith Robin) "Hold thy hand, noble Pindar, for I protest thou art the stoutest man that I ever yet laid my hand on." To whom the Pindar reply'd, "Recal thy words, for thou never yet laid thy hand on me." Robin reply'd, "Nor will I, noble George, but in courtesie. Know then, I am Robin Hood, this is my Mariana, and these my bold yeomen, who are come as far as the forest of Sheerwood only to prove thy valour, and to be spectators of Beatrice's beauty, both which I have found to exceed that liberal report which fame hath given out of them." At which words the Pindar embraced him, and told him, "that, next to King Richard, he was the man he most honour'd, and craved pardon of Matilda, otherwise call'd maid Mariana." He caused Beatrice to submit her self unto her on her

knees, to which she willingly assented ; but the sweet lady would by no means suffer her, but lovingly kiss'd and embraced her, who confess'd, that she could not have thought that the north country could have bred such a beauty. Much joy there was on all sides : so George invited both of them and their friends to an entertainment, wherein he shew'd himself to be as bountiful in mind, as he was famous in the strength of his body ; for their welcome and cheer was much above their expectation, as better suiting with a large manor-house, than a thatch'd cottage. Nor did Robin come altogether unprovided from Sheerwood ; for he had both money and divers heiffers laden with provisions of all sorts, which follow'd him on purpose to feast and revel with the Pindar, where I leave them in all the content and felicity that may be, and proceed to King Richard upon his new welcome from his wars in Palestine.

CHAP. XI.

How King Richard, after his Return, by reason of many Complaints made unto him, order'd those Abuses, which in his Absence had been committed by the Prince and Bishop, to be redress'd : How the Rebels were presented unto him, and his Disposing of them ; and how George A Green was reported of to the King.

RICHARD, the first of that name, for his great hardiness and magnanimity surnam'd Cueur de Lion, king of

England, after some years spent in the holy wars, was received into the kingdom with much joy and solemnity, which was no sooner past over, but divers complaints petition-wise, were deliver'd unto him concerning sundry oppressions made by the ambitious bishop, and insolencies committed by the prince, which, by the advice of his council, he studied how to reform. Those being brought to some reasonable effect, he then began to consider of fresh forces to be suddenly raised towards the suppression of those rebels in the north. In the middle of these considerations, there arriv'd at London young Cuddy Musgrave, with Sir Gilbert Armstrong, and presented him a prisoner to the king, telling the manner of his surprizal, and how the grand army was defeated, which was much further'd by the means of one George A. Green, Pindar of the town of Wakefield, who by taking a spy of their's, and hanging him up before the gate of Sandon castle, they thereby discover'd the strength of the rebels, and learn'd how and when to take them careless and unprovided, which was the occasion of so famous and fortunate a victory. The king had scarce leisure to commend their care and diligence, but Justice Grymes likewise, before the king could make sufficient enquiry what became of the others, who were the chief of the rebellion, came and presented, as from George A. Green, the Earl of Kendal, the Lord Bonville, and Mannering; representing it with such an exact testimony of the Pindar's valour (as relating from the beginning all such remarkable things as are spoken

of him in this history) that his majesty made open protestations, that he was glad to have so good and valiant a subject, when turning towards the earl of Kendal, the king in meer derision vail'd his bonnet to him, and said withal, "My lord, you are welcome to London. I did not think at my departure you and I should have seen one another here upon these terms." At which salutation the earl, remembering the former prophecy, cursed the wizzard, whose vain and idle prediction had been the occasion of his ruine and downfall. In short, the rebels were all committed to the tower, there to remain till their further trial. This done, the king enquiring further of the Pindar, and finding more and more to be spoken in his commendation, purposed to disguise himself, and, with the earl of Leicester only, who had been a co-partner with him in his wars, and Cuddy Musgrave for their guide and conductor, to travel into the north, to take a view not only of this so famous yeoman, but to listen withal how he was beloved in those parts, and his government beliked of. In this interim of time, whilst the king was preparing himself and the rest for the journey, Justice Grymes being discharged of his prisoners, and having leave to depart into the country, with great thanks from the king for his late great care, he long'd to be at home to take a better view of that supposed girl, who was left, as it were, as a pawn for his daughter. Great charge he had given, that she should be safely kept and well attended, but to trust her no further than her chamber, till he himself came to

take her to a further examination, which, by reason of his former pressing business, he had not leisure to do. We may suppose him now on his way towards the country, whither the king himself intended his private progress.

We must now look back again to Robert, earl of Huntington, and Matilda, otherwise call'd Robin Hood and maid Mariana, whom we left feasting with George A Green and his sweet Beatrice, who, besides their courteous entertainment, was willing to shew his guests all the sports and merry passages of the country.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Town of Merry Bradstead, and a Custom therein, called Trail-Staff, observed by the Shooe-Makers, otherwise called, The Gentle Craft. How the King, Leicester, and Cuddy past through this Town, and of their meeting with Robin Hood, and George A Green, and what further happen'd.

THERE is a town not far from Wakefield, which is called Bradstead, where the shooe-makers, by long tradition, have observ'd a custom, that no person shall walk thro' the town with his staff upon his shoulders, unless he will have a bout or two with some one or other of the gentle craft : but if he trail'd it after him, he might pass peaceably without any trouble or molestation ; for there was none would say so much as, black was his eye. It so happen'd, that the king's way, with Leicester's and

Cuddy's, happen'd to lie thro' this town, who being disguised like country yeomen, and it seems not well acquainted with the custom, like honest plain travellers, (as the use was then) walk'd boldly with their staves upon their necks; which being espied by the trade of shoos-makers, three stout fellows of them, with every one a good staff in his hand stepp'd out of their shops, and beat their's from their shoulders. The king having had genteel entertainment in all other places, wonder'd at such rudeness, and gently demanded of them the reason of that violence then offer'd them. They answer'd him again, "that it was a privilege they had, which they had observed time out of mind. Their fathers had kept it, and they would leave it hereditary to their successors." They demanded of them, whether they had any such patent from the king, who answer'd again, "they did not stand upon patents, neither knew they any law for it, saving staff-ends-law; and that all their fraternity were ready to maintain it with downright blows, and therefore bid them peremptorily to handle their staves for there was no other way to save them from a present and sower banging." The king told them, "they were peaceable men, and rather than to break their custom, or to enter into unnecessary quarrel, they would drag their staves after them," and so did.

Whilst these things were debating, came George A Green disguised, with Robin Hood and his yeomen, with every one a good bat on his neck. George having told Robin what mad merry custom the jolly shoemakers

maintain'd, and bringing him that way on purpose only for sport's sake, and to try what mettle they had in them, espies the king, Leicester and Cuddy to trail their staves after them; at which sight being moved, "See, Robin, (saith he) three lusty, able, proper fellows, that dare not advance their staves for fear of the shoe-makers." Then asking Robin Hood, what he thought of them? He answer'd, "That he took them to be base cowardly fellows, and that it was pity such goodly shapes should cover such timorous and degenerate spirits, very cowards." So, saith George, I'll presently correct them, and coming up close to them, he first began to upbraid them with their fear and cowardize, and afterwards concluded, that if they did not presently raise their staves, and bear them up, maugre any that durst to interpose, he himself would cudgel them more soundly, than the townsmen were able to do: Had they express'd themselves to be valiant men, they should have been excused. The king answer'd, "I was never put to so hard a choice, as to be beaten, fight or fight not:" and so desired to be excused, since they were travellers, men of peace, and altogether unacquainted with any such hard customs. His words were scarce ended, when out came a crew of shoe-makers, every man well appointed, and told them, that even they should obey their custom, bid them down with their may-poles, and withal began to strike their staves from their necks. That was the watch-word which the Pindar and his comrades look'd for, and now began the greatest combat that was ever seen in the street of Brad-

stead : for Robin and George began to clear the whole street before them, insomuch that all the town rose, masters, apprentices and journey-men : not a staff to be found, that was not used in defence of their liberty. There was nothing now thought on but havock and pall mall ; the Pindar himself seem'd to be pounded in amongst them, and many a shoe-maker was brought to his last, and many a staff was shiver'd, and made skewers : crack'd crowns went current, tho' many were found to take them against their wills : the shoemaker themselves thought fit to give ground, who had vow'd to lose bodies and souls in the quarrel, and run to shelter themselves most shamefully. This put the king and Leicester in mind of the great conflicts betwixt them and the infidels ; for even here no christian could find favour or mercy during this battle, and the victory was still doubtful ; for what the gentle craft wanted in strength, they had in number ; yet neither party were heard to sound a retreat, till at length the Pindar's disguise falling off in the battle, he was no sooner discover'd and known, but the shoe-makers cry'd, Trail ; they flung down their staves, and cast up their caps, and bid them welcome to the merry town of Bradstead with a loud shout. No man thought more of his hurt, for the joy they had to see the Pindar ; for as the Trojans thought such more honour'd than harm'd that were hurt by the hand of Achilles, so amongst them it was held rather a dignity than a disparagement to wear any honourable scar made by the hand of the Pindar. George

having breathed himself a little, thank'd them for their lives, and presently commanded a barrel of the best and strongest ale should be brought and set in the streets, which was instantly done and paid for. Then George entreating them, as they tender'd him, to bid his friends welcome, they then came about him like gnats: but when George had told them who they were, namely, Robin Hood and his bold yeomen, who had travell'd as far as from the forest of Sheerwood to prove what mettle was in their fraternity, this was as good as a plaister to every man's broken head; for, with a joint acclamation, they gave them a loud and hearty welcome. All this the king observing, and perceiving, the two prime men to be there present whom he had such a great desire to see, call'd to Cuddy, and bid him provide him the royal habit, which he had caused to be brought, in case of any needful occasion. In the meantime, the champions being all placed in the midst of the street, and beleagured on all sides, the Pindar call'd for a deep wayssel-bowl, and filling it brime full, and falling down upon his knees, all the rest doing the like, he said, "Here, Robin Hood, I drink an health, to good king Richard, and thou being the best man in the company, shalt first pledge it. That done, let it go round amongst the shoce-makers:" but casting his eye aside, continued, "only I except from this health those cowardly travellers, who are unworthy to drink so brave and valiant a prince's health, who for fear durst not carry their staves upon their shoulders." Off went

the health with a great shout, and was fill'd for Robin, which he had no sooner drunk, but the king casting a princely mantle about himself, and Leicester and Cuddy plucking off their disguised habits, stept in amongst them, and said, "Nay, Robin Hood, tho' you were of late held to be the best man in the company, yet, by the Pindar's good leave, give king Richard licence to be the third man at least to drink his own health." These words, graced with his majestical habit and countenance, much astonish'd them on a sudden, but especially the shoo-makers, who made no question, than that they were all no better than food for the gal-lows. But at length the Pindar (whom nothing, save so great a majesty, was able to daunt) recollecting himself, most humbly submitted unto the king, desiring his grace and pardon for those vile and rude insolencies committed against his sacred majesty; whom the king as graciously pardon'd, and taking Robin Hood from his knees, saluted him by the name of Robert, Earl of Huntingdon, assuring him, upon his kingly promise, all his lands and revenues, injurious seiz'd and extorted from him by the Bishop of Ely and Prince John, should be restor'd unto him; and that his Matilda, daughter to the Earl of Fitz-Walters, should be conferr'd upon him, maugre those indirect means by which the prince his brother had insidiated her honour. This news of the king was presently spread abroad into the country. Amongst other homages, the king call'd for George A Green, and bid him kneel down, because that, for his



TOM A LINCOLNE.

TOM A LINCOLNE.

The History of Tom a Lincolne, the Red Rose Knight, is one of the numerous productions of Richard Johnson, the author of that very popular Romance *The Seven Champions of Christendom*,* which was said by Ritson to contain "all the lyes of Christendom in one lye;" and like that favourite volume of his contemporaries, contains abundant

* '*The Famous Historie of the Seven Champions of Christendome*,' the work by which our author is best known, is mentioned (as we learn from the Rev. A. Dyce's note to Kemp's *Nine Daies Wonder*) in the Stationers' Books as early as 20th April 1596, when 'John Danter Entred for his Copie under thande of the Wardens, a booke intituled, The famous Hystory of the Seven Champions of Christiandome, St. George of England, St. Dennys of Fraunce, St. James of Spayne, St. Anthony of Italy, St. Andrew of Scotland, St. Patrick of Irland, and St. David of Wales, vid. ' ; and on the 6th Sept. following, "Cuthbert Burby Entred for his Copie by Assignments from John Danter, Twoo bookes, viz. the first pte and second pte of the vii Champions of Christiandom, Reservinge the workmanshippe of the printinge at all tymes to the said Jo. Danter vijd." No copy of this edition is known I believe at the present time. But it is alluded to by Bishop Hall in his *Satires* published in 1597: "St. George's Sorrell & his cross of blood;"—and by Meres in his *Palladis Tamia*, or *Wits Treasury*, published in the following year.

evidence of the writer's intimate knowledge of the old Romances of Chivalry; for a cursory perusal will suffice to show that his claims to originality are but limited, his incidents being principally copied from the Metrical Romances of former ages, and his style from that of Lylie's Euphues:

Talking of stones, stars, planets, fishes, flies,
Playing with words, and idle similies.

If it were necessary to adduce more direct proof of the author's acquaintance with the earlier Romances, than the general character of the incidents introduced into his performance, (and which are literally old friends with new faces, being only the favourite and well established adventures of Knighthood, rendered once more interesting by a novel mode of relating them) it would be found in his having conferred upon the Red Rose Knight the especial favour of the Fairy Queen, when a storm had driven him to the "Lande of Faërie," the Elysium of the Middle Age Romances:

" Here is the quene of Faerie
With harp and pipe and simphonie
Dwelling in this place."

And in the manner in which "fair Anglitora with her own hands" washed the body of the Knight, which is

evidently copied from the *Mort d'Arthur* (Book viii. cap. 9.) in which *Sir Tristram* is put in the ward and keeping of *La belle Isoud King Anguishes* daughter, "because she was a noble surgion." And *Sir Tristram*, like the present worthy, requited her kindness with his love. Her namesake, *Iseult aux blanches mains*, was equally expert and successful.

The Great Bell at Lincoln, which our hero is said to have sent to that city, and to have called after his name, (though without doubt his name was selected from the popularity which Great Tom already enjoyed,) hangs in the north steeple of the Cathedral, called St. Mary's Steeple, and is thus described in the *History of Lincoln*, 8vo. 1816. p. 74:—the passage in inverted commas is from Don Espriella's (Mr. Southey) Letters :

"We ascended one of the other towers afterwards to see *Great Tom*, the largest bell in England. At first it disappointed me, but the disappointment wore off, and we became satisfied that it was as great a thing as it was said to be. A tall man might stand in it upright; the mouth measures one and twenty English feet in circumference, and it would be a large tree of which the girth equalled the size of its middle. The hours are struck upon it with a hammer. I should tell you that the method of sounding

bells in England is not by striking, but by swinging them; no bell, however, which approaches nearly to the size of this is ever moved, except this; it is swung on Whitsunday, and when the Judges arrive to try prisoners—another fit occasion would be at executions, to which it would give great solemnity, for the sound is heard far and wide over the Fens. On other occasions it was disused, because it shook the tower, but the stones have now been secured with iron cramps. Tom seems to be the only name which they give to a bell in this country."

Round the crown thereof is this inscription,

SPIRITUS SANCTUS A PATRE ET FILIO PROCE-
DENS SUAVITER SONANS AD SALUTEM, ANNO
DOMINI, 1610, DECEMBRIS 3, REGNI JACOBI,
ANGLIE 8°, ET SCOTIE, 44°.

And round the skirt is the following,

LAVRENTIVS STANTON, DECANVS, ROGERVS
PARKER, PRECENTOR, ET MAGISTER FABRICIE,
GEORGIVS ELAND, CANCELLARIVS, ET MAGIS-
TER FABRICIE. RICHARDVS CLAYTON, ARCHI-
DIACONUS, LINCOLN.

The weight of this surprising bell is nine thou-
sand eight hundred and ninety-four pounds.

It has been gauged, and will hold four hundred
and twenty-four gallons, ale measure. The compass

of its mouth is about seven yards and a half, and two inches.*

Great Tom of Lincoln has never travelled beyond the precincts of his own church, but was manufactured on the spot ; for which purpose a furnace was erected in the minster yard in the year 1610; from which he was cast by Henry Holdfield, of Nottingham, and William Newcomb, of Leicester, bell-founders, and partners in this concern only ; which connection arose from the former being a man of the first eminence in his profession, and to whom such a charge could with safety be committed, and the latter living within the diocese ; for the honour of which it was deemed necessary he should have some concern in the business.

In the *Historical Account of Lincoln Cathedral*, 8vo. 1771, we have some account of Great Tom's predecessor.

The weight of the old bell, before the present was cast, was seven thousand eight hundred and seven pounds, at one hundred and twelve pounds per hundred. The weight of the present is nine thousand eight hundred and ninety-four, at one hundred and twelve pounds per hundred ; added, two thousand and eighty-seven pounds.

* Don Espriella's statement of the circumference is not correct.

The motives which induced our author to select so popular a title for his hero, probably guided him in his selection of a father-in-law, and accordingly the daughter of Prester John is won by him, and becomes his wife.

Many particulars respecting this celebrated personage are to be found in Todd's *Illustrations to Gower and Chaucer*, p. 365, et seq. where it is said he was "no doubt, commended to public notice more powerfully in Chaucer's time, on the return of Sir John Mandeville from his marvellous voyages and travels." This narrative (which has been often printed) contains two chapters respecting Prester John's domains, character, &c. see ch. lxxxvi.; and Mr. Weber, *Metrical Roman*. vol. iii. p. 302, quotes from a MS. Mandeville, in the Advocates' Library, Edinburgh, the following account of his having obtained the appellation of Prester John.

"There was sumtyme an emperour that was a noble man and a dowty. And he hade many Cristen kynges vnder him. And the emperour thought that he wold se the maner of Cristen men seruyse in holy chyrch. And than wer chyrches in all the cuntres, in Torky, Surrye, Tartari, Jerusalem, Palastari, Arabi, and Harrape, and all the lond of Egypt; and all the londes were that time Cresten. And yt was on a

Saturdaye in Wytson-weke wan the basschope made ordyrs; and he beheld the servyce, and he askyd a knyght what folke schuld be tho that stode before the busschope. And the knyght seyde the schuld be prester; and than he seyde, that a wold no more be callyd emperour nor kynge, but prester. And he wold haue the name of hym that cam out wat that euer he hight. And so yt happid, that the prest that cam out fyrst, hight John, and so hath all the emperours sythyn be called Prester Jon." Avril, *Voyage en divers etats d' Europe, &c.* Paris, 1693, contains some further illustrations of the history of this renowned character.

The hundred whiffers most richly attired who were appointed to keepe the streets plain and open, appear from the definition in Minsheu's *Dictionary*, 1617, to be club or staff bearers. Sometimes the whiffers carried white staves, as in the annual feast of the printers, founders, and inkmakers, so curiously described in Randle Holme's *Academy of Armory*, book iii. c. 3, where one of them is stated to have carried in his right hand a great bowl of white wine and vinegar.*

The present reprint has been made from the seventh Edition of the Romance, 4to. 1635, with the

* Douce's *Illust. of Shakspeare*, vol. 1, p. 507-8.

loan of which the Editor was favoured by the late Mr. Utterson, but the last leaf being defective, was supplied from a copy of the 12th Edition, 4to. London, 1682, in the Pepysian Library, Cambridge, an edition in many respects much abbreviated, but capable of supplying the few lines wanting in the copy made use of on the present occasion.

I cannot better conclude this notice than by a list of the other works which were written by our author, and which I am now enabled to make much more complete by the researches of Mr. Chappell, to whose valuable introduction to his reprint of Johnson's *Crown Garland of Golden Roses* for the Percy Society, I am indebted for the greater portion of the following List of Johnson's works.

The Nine Worthies of London ; explaining the honourable Exercise of Armes, the vertues of the valiant and the memorable attempts of Magnanimous Minds, 4to. 1592 ; reprinted in the Harleian Miscellany, viii. 437. ed. Park.

Anglorum Lachrymæ in a sad Passion, complayning the Death of Queene Elizabeth, yet comforted againe by the vertuous hopes of King James, 4to. 1603.

The Pleasant Walkes of Moore-fields, 4to. 1607.

A Remembrance of the Honors due to the Life and Death of Robert Earle of Salisbury, 4to. 1612.

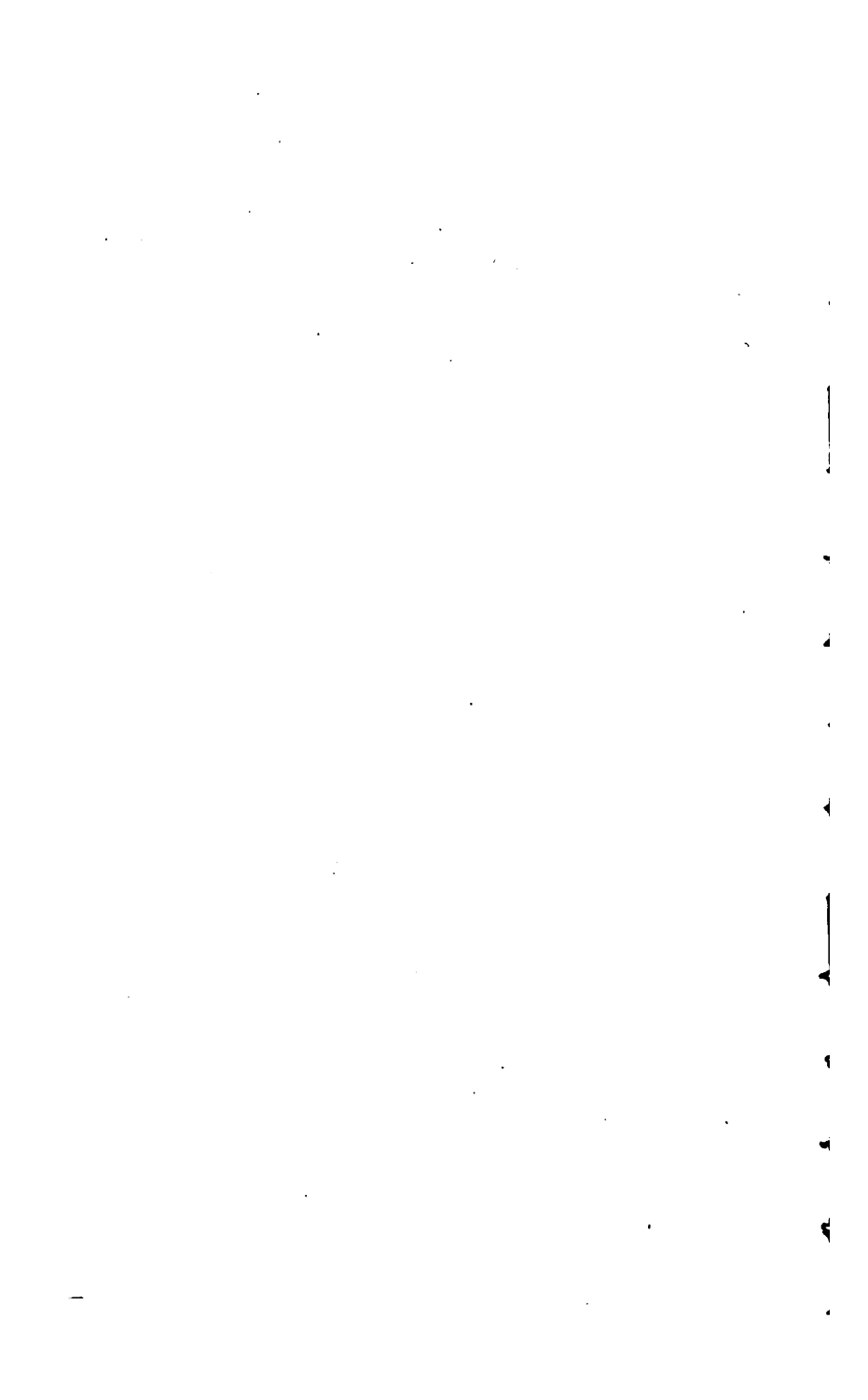
The Pleasant Conceites of Old Hobson the Merry Londoner, full of Humorous Discourses and Witty Merriments. Collected together by R. J. London, 1607, 4to. black letter.

The Crowne Garland of Golden Roses gathered out of England's Royal Garden, &c. 1612, 1631, 1659, 1662, 1680, 1692—Reprinted by the Percy Society.

The History of Tom Thumbe (in prose), 12mo. 1621.

Dainty Conceits, 1630.

Richard Johnson likewise reprinted *Don Flores of Greece*, 4to. 1664.



THE
MOST PLEASANT HISTORY
OF
TOM A LINCOLNE,

THAT RENOWNED SOLDIER,
THE RED ROSE KNIGHT,
WHO FOR HIS VALOUR AND CHIVALRY WAS SURNAMED
The Boast of England.

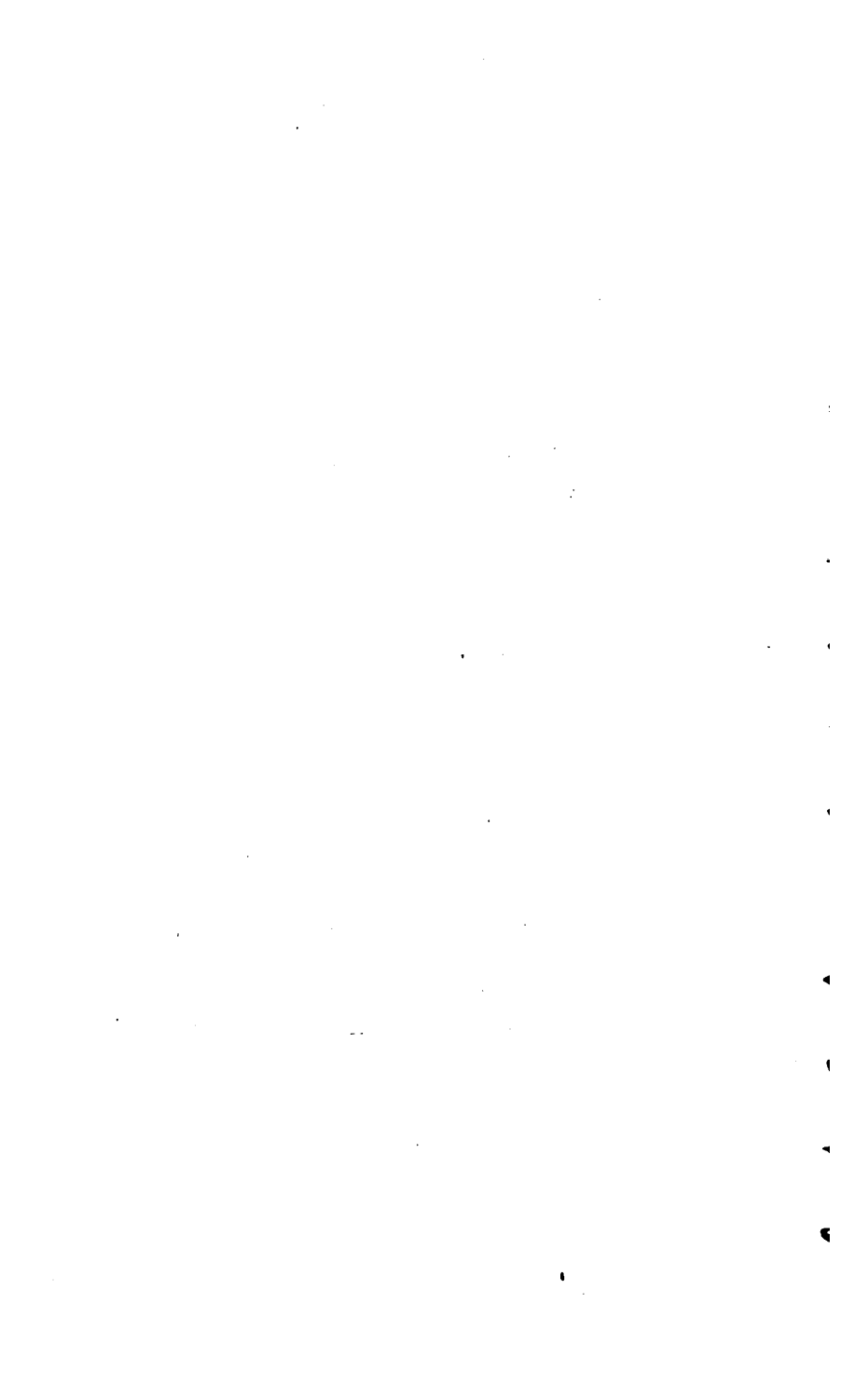
Shewing his Honourable Victories in Forraine Countries, with
his strange Fortunes in the *Fayrie Land*: and how hee
married the faire *Anglitora*, daughter to *Prestor*
John, that renowned Monarke of the
World.

Together with the Lives and Deaths of his two famous Sons, the
Blacke Knight, and the *Fayrie Knight*, with divers
other memorable accidents, full of
delight.

By Richard Johnson
The Seventh Impression.

LONDON :

PRINTED BY A. M. AND ARE TO BE SOLD BY FRANCIS FAULNER, AND
FRANCIS COULES, 1635. w p

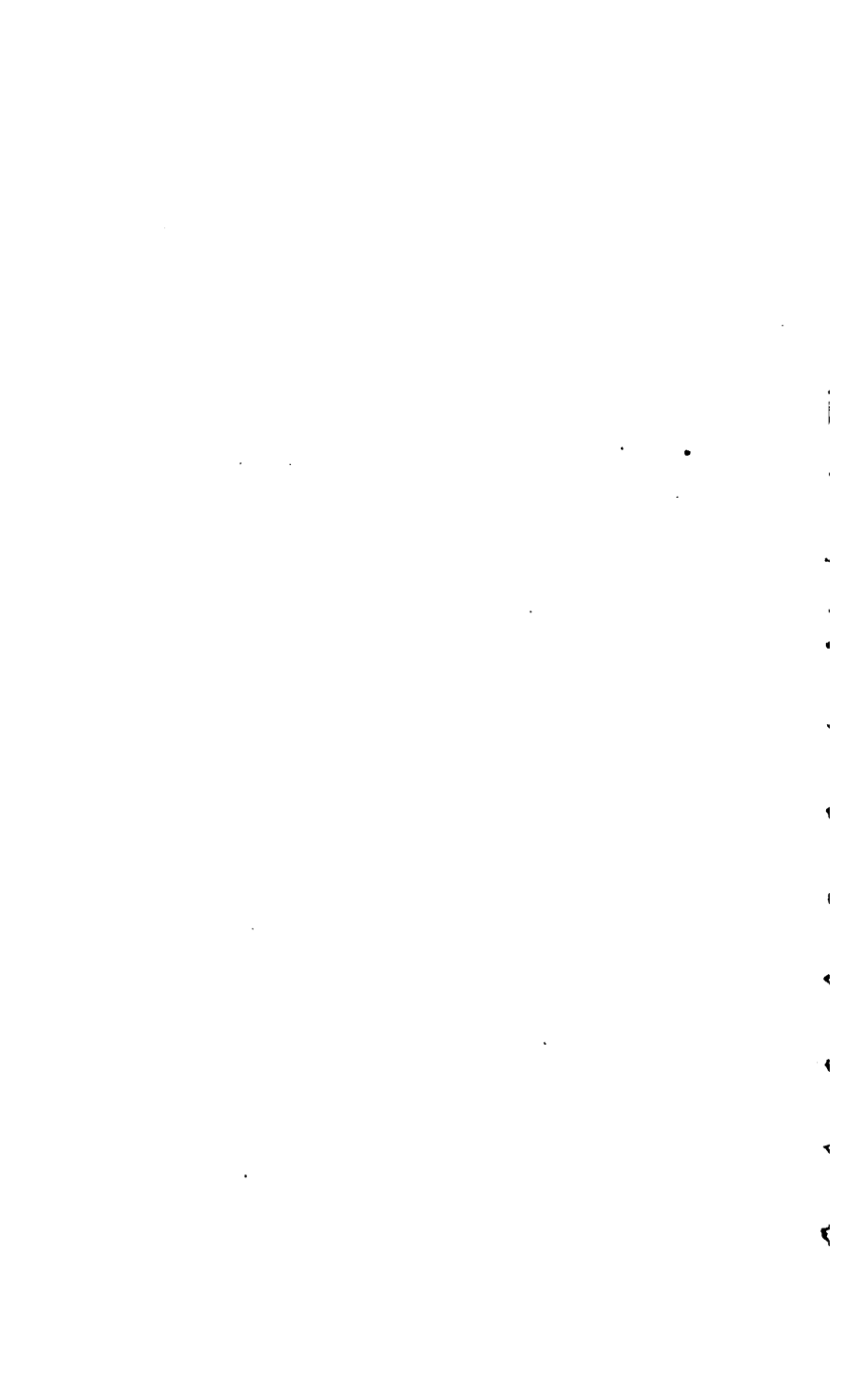


TO THE RIGHT WORSHIPFULL SIMON WORTEDGE
OF OKENBERRIE, IN THE COUNTY OF HUN-
TINGTON, ESQ. HEALTH, HAPPINESSE
AND PROSPERITY.

The generall report and consideration (right worshipfull) of your exceeding curtesie, and the great friendship which my parents have heretofore found at the hands of your renowned father, do imbolden me to present unto your worship these my unpolisht labours ; which if you shall vouchsafe to cast a favourable glance upon, and therein find any part or parcell pleasing to your vertuous mind, I shall esteeme my travell most highly honoured. The history (I present) you shall find delightfull, the matter not offensive to any ; only my skill in penning is very simple, and my presumption great, in presenting so rude a piece of worke to so wise a patron ; which I hope your worship will the more beare with, and account the rather to be pardonable, in that the fault proceedeth from a good meaning.

Your worship's devoted, and
poore countryman,

R. I.



THE PLEASANT HISTORIE OF TOM A LINCOLNE,
THE RED ROSE KNIGHT, FOR HIS VALOUR
AND CHIVALRIE, SURNAMED
THE BOAST OF ENGLAND.

CHAP. I.

How King Arthur loved faire Angellica, the Earle of
Londons Daughter: and likewise of the birth of
Tom a Lincolne.

WHEN as King Arthur wore the imperial diadem of
England, and by his chivalrie had purchased many
famous victories, to the great renowne of this mayden
land, hee ordeined the order of the Round Table, and
selected many worthy knights to attend his Majestie;
of whose glittering renowne many ancient histories doe
record; and witnesse to all insuing ages.

This worthy prince, upon a time intending to visit
the city of London, with some few number of his
knights, came and feasted with Androgus, being at that
time Earle of London; whose house (as then) was not
onely replenished with most delicate fare, but grac't
with a number of beautifull ladies who gave such a

pleasing entertainment to King Arthur and his knights, that they were ravished with pleasure, and quite forgot the sound of martiall drums that had wont to summon them forth to the fields of honour. Amongst these glorious troopes of London ladyes, Angellica the Earles daughter, had the chieftest praise for beauty and courtly behaviour ; for even as the silver shining moone in a winters frosty night, surpasseth the brightest of the twinkling stars, so faire Angellicas sweet feature exceeded the rest of the ladies ; whereby King Arthur was so intangled in the snares of love, that by no means he could withdraw his affections from her divine excellence. He that before delighted to tread a weary march after Bellonas drums, was now constrained to trace Cupids pleasures in ladies chambers ; and could as well straine the strings of a lovers lute as sound a souldiers alarme in the field : her beautie like the adamant drew his steeled heart to lodge in the closure of her brest: and no company delighted so much the love-sicke king as the presence of faire Angellica. So upon a time as he stood looking out of his chamber window, he espied the mistris of his soule sitting in a garden under a bower of vines, prettily picking the ripest grapes with her delicate hands, and tooke such pleasant paines in that mayden-like exercise, that the well coloured blood in her face began to waxe warm, and her cheeks to obtaine such an excellent beauty, that they seemed like two purple roses intermixt with hawthorne-buds: whereby King Arthur grew inamored upon her, and stood for a time senseless through the extreame passion

he tooke in beholding her beauty ; but at last, recovering his senses, he spake to her in this maner.

Oh most divine Angellica, natures sole wonder, thou excellent ornament of beauty, thy lovely face painted with a crimson dye, thy roscall cheecks surpassing snow in whitenesse, thy decent necke like purest ivory, hath, like a fowler's net, entangled my yeelding heart, whereby it is for evermore imprisoned in thy breast. Oh that the golden tresses of thy dainty haire which shine like the rubys glittering in the sun, had never twinckled before my ravisht eyes, then had my heart enjoyed his wonted liberty, and my fancie been free from lovers vaine imaginations. Thus, and in like maner complained the king unto himselfe, seeking by all meanes possible to exclude love's fire from his breast. But the more he strove to abandon it the more it increased, and feeling no pollicie might prevaile, but that this burning torment must of force bee quenched with her celestial love, hee descended from his chamber, and went bouldly into the garden ; where, taking Angellica by the hand as shee sate upon a bed of violets, which, as then, grew under the arbour, in this manner began to court her.

Faire of all faires (sayd the king) divine and beautiful paragon, faire flower of London, know that since my aboad in thy father's house, thy beauty hath so conquered my affections, and so bereaved me of my liberty that unless thou vouchsafe to coole my ardent desires with a willing graunt of thy love, I am like to dye a

languishing death, and this countrey, England, of force must lose him that hath fill'd her boundes with many triumphant victories : therefore sweete Angellica, if thy hard heart be so obdurate that the teares of my true love may nothing mollifie, yet take pittie on thy countrey, that through thy cruelty she loose not her wanton glory, and be made unhappy by the losse of her soveraigne ; thou seest, my divine Angellica, how I, that have made princes stoope, and kings to humble when I have frownde, doe now submissively yeeld my high honour to thy feete, either to be made happy by thy love, or unhappy in thy hate, that in time to come children may either blesse, or curse thee. Of these two consider which thou wilt perform, either with cruelty to kill mee, or with clemencie to preserve mee.

This unexpected request of the king so amazed Angellica that her cheeks were stayned with blushing shame, and like a bashfull maiden (for a time) stood silent, not knowing in what manner to answer him, considering hee was king of England, and shee but daughter to an earle. But at last, when feare and shame had a while strove together in her heart, shee replyed in this sort.

Most mighty king, said she, if your entertainment in my father's house hath been honorable, seek not the foule dishonour of his daughter, nor proffer to blemish the bud of her verginitie with the least thought of your unchast desires, the losse of which sweete jemme, is a torment to my soule more worse than death. Con-

sider with yourselfe (most worthy prince) the blacke scandall that it may bring unto your name, and honour, having a queene, a most vertuous and loyall princesse. Thinke upon the staine of your marriage bed, the wrongs of your wedded pheere and lasting infamie of your divine glorie, for this I vow (by Dianaes bright majestie) before I will yield the conquest of my virginities to the spoyle of such unchast desire, I will suffer more torments then mans heart can imagine: therefore, (most mighty soveraigne) cease your unreverend suite for I will not loose that matchlesse jewell for all the treasure the large ocean contains: And in speaking these words shee departed thence, and left the lovesicke king in the arbour complaining to the emptieayre, where after hee had numbered many determinations together, this hee purposed; never to cease his suite, till he had gained what his soule so much desired: for continually at the break of day, when Titans beautie began to shine, and Auroraes blush to appeare, would hee always send to her chamber window the sweetest musicke that could bee devised; thinking thereby to obtaine her love. Many times would hee sollicite her with rich gifts and large promises, befitting rather an empresse than the daughter of an earle, profering such kindnesses, that if she had a heart of iron, yet could she not choose but relent and requite his curtesies, for what is it that time will not accomplish, having the hand of a king set thereunto.

Twelve weary dayes King Arthur spent in wooing of

Angellica before he could obtaine his heart's happinesse, and his soul's contente; at the end of which time she was as plyant to his will, as is the tender twig to the hand of the husbandman. But now their secret meaning required a pollicie to keepe their privie loves both from King Arthurs queene, and from old Androgius, Angellica's father: and that their secrete loves might long time continue without mistrust of any partie whatsoever, this device they contrived: that Angellica should desire liberty of her father, to spend the remainder of her life in the service of Diana, like one that abandoned all earthly vanitie, honouring true chastitie and religious life: so with a demure countenance, and a sober grace, she went unto her father, and obtained such leave at his hands, that he willingly condescended that she should live as a professed nunne, in a monasterie that the king before time had builded in the citie of Lincolne; and so furnishing her forthwith such necessities as her state required, he gave her his blessing, and so committed her to Dianaes service.

But now Angellica being no sooner placed in the monastery and chosen a sister of that fellowship, but King Arthur many times visited her in so secret a manner, and so disguisedly, that no man suspected their pleasant meetings: but so long tasted they the joyes of love, that in the end the nun grew great bellied and bore King Arthurs quittance sealed in her wombe and at the end of forty weeks she was delivered; where in presence of the midwife and one more whom the king

largely recompensed for their secrecy, shee was made a happy mother of a goodly son, whom King Arthur caused to be wrapped in a mantle of greene silke, tying a purse of gold about his necke, and so causing the midwife to beare it into the field, and to lay it at a shepherds gate neare adjoyning to the citie, in hope the old man should foster it as his own ; by which means his Angelica's dishonour might be kept secret from the world, and his own disgrace from the murmuring reports of the vulgar people.

This his commandment was so speedily performed by the midwife, that the very next morning she stole the young infant from his mother's keeping, and bore it secretly to the place appointed, there laying it downe upon a turfe of greene grasse ; it seemed prettily to smile turning its chrystall eyes up towards the elements, as though it foreknew its owne good fortune. This being done, the midwife withdrewe herselfe some little distance from that place, and hid herselfe closely behind a well growne oake, deligently marking what should betide the comfortlesse infant ; but long she had not there remained, but there flocked such a number of little birds about the young harmlesse babe, and made such a chirping melody, that it fell into a silent slumber, and slept as sweetly as though it had beene laid in a bed of softest silke.

By this time, the golden sunne began to glisten on the mountaine top, and his sister Luna to withdraw her waterish countenance : at which time the pleasant shep-

herds began to tune their morning notes and to rejoyce unto their folded sheepe, according to their wonted manner: Amongst which crew of lusty swaynes, old Antonio approached forth of his gate with a cheerfull countenance, whose beard was as white as polished silver, or like to snowe lying upon the northern mountaines: this bonny shepherd no sooner espyed Angellica's sweete babe lying upon the greene hillocke, but immediately hee tooke it up; and viewing circumspectly every parcell of the rich vestements wherein it was wrapped, at last found out the purse of gold, which the king had tyed unto the child's necke, whereat the shepherd so exceedingly rejoyced, that for the time he stood as a man ravished with pleasure, and was not able to remove from the place where he stood: but yet at last thinking with himselfe that heaven had sent him that good fortune, not onely giving him riches but withall a sonne, to be a comfort to him in his latter yeares; so bearing it in to his old wife, and withall the purse of gold, and the rich mantle, with the other things: who at the sight thereof was as highly pleased as her husband when he found it first: so being both agreed to foster, and bring it up as their own, considering, that nature never gave them in all their life any child, incontinently they caused it to be christned, and called by the name of TOM A LINCOLNE, (after the towne where it was found) a name most fitting for it, in that they knew not who were his true parents..

But now speake wee againe of the midwife, that

after shee had beheld how kindly old Antonio received the young infant, she returned backe unto Angellica's chamber, whom shee found bitterly lamenting the loss of her tender babe, thinking that some fayrie nymph had stolen it away; but such was the kind comfort which the smooth-tonged midwife gave her in that extremity, whereby her sorrow seemed the less, and her mistrustfull feare exchanged into smiling hope: yet neither would the king nor the midwife at any time whatsoever make knowne unto her what was become of her little sonne, but driving her off with delayes and fond excuses, lest having intelligence of his abode she should (through kind love and naturall affection) goe visite him, and so discover their loves practices. Thus lived the most faire Angellica many dayes in great griefe wishing his returne, and desiring heaven that the destinies might be so favourable, that once againe before the fatall sisters had finished her life she might behold her infant's face, for whose presence her very soule thirsted. Here will we leave the solitary lady comfortlesse and without company (except it were the king who sometimes visited her by stealth) and report what happened to Tom a Lincolne in the shepherd's house.

CHAP. II.

Of the manner of Tom a Lincolne bringing up, and how hee first came to be called the Red Rose Knight, with other things that hapned to him.

GREAT was the wealth that old Antonio gathered together, by means of the treasure he found about the

infants attire, whereby hee became the richest in all that country, and purchast such lands and livings, that his supposed sonne (for wealth) was deemed a fit match for a knights daughter : yet for all this his bringing up was but meane, and in a homely sort, for after he had passed ten years of his age he was set to keep Antonio's sheepe, and to follow husbandry, whereby he grew strong and hardy, and continually gave himselfe to painefull endeavours, imagining and devising haughty and great enterprises ; yet, notwithstanding, was of honest and virtuous conditions, well featured, valiant, active, quick, and nimble, sharpwitted, and of a ripe judgment : hee was of a valiant and invincible courage, so that from his cradle and infancy, it seemed he was vowed to Mars and martiall exploits. And in his life and manners is deciphered the image of true nobility ; for though hee obscurely lived in a countrey cottage, yet had hee a superior mind, ayming at state and majesty, bearing in his breast the princely thoughts of his father. For on a time having cattell in the field among other young men of his age and condition, he was chosen (in sport by them) for their lord or knight, and they to attend on him like dutiful servants ; and though this their election was but in play, yet hee whose spirits were ravished with great and high matters, first procured them to sweare to him loyalty in all things, and to obey him as a king, where, or when it should please him in any matter to command them, to which they all most willingly condescended. Thus after they had solemnly taken their oathes, he persuaded them to

leave that base and servile kind of life, seeking to serve in war, and to follow him, being the generall ; the which through perswasion they did, and so leaving their cattell to their fathers and masters, they assembled all together, to the full number of a hundred at least : unto whom he severally gave certain red roses, to be worne for colours in their hats, and commanded them that ever after he should be called the **RED ROSE KNIGHT**.

So in this manner departed he with his followers unto Barnsdale Heath, where they pitched up tents and lived long time upon the robberies and spoyles of passengers, insomuch that the whole country was greatly molested by them.

This disordered life so highly displeased the parents of these unruly outlaws, that many of them dyed with griefe ; but especially of all other, old Antonio took it in ill part, considering how dearly hee loved him, and how tenderly he had brought him up from his infancie ; therefore he purposed to practice a meane to call him from that uncivill kind of life, if it might possible be brought to passe : so in his old dayes undertaking this taske, hee travelled towards Barnsdale heath, into which being no sooner entered but some of the ruder sorte of these outlawes seized upon the old man, and without any further violence brought him before their lord and captain, who at the first sight knew him to be his father (as he thought) and therefore used him most kindly, giving him the best entertainment that hee could devise : where, after they had some small time conferred toge-

ther, the good old man brake out into these speeches ;
Oh thou degenerate (quoth he) from natures kind :
is this thy duty to thy father's age, thus disobediently
to live, wounding thy natural country with unlawfull
spoyles ? Is this the comfort of mine age, is this thy
love unto thy parents, whose tender care hath beene
ever to advance thy estate ? Canst thou behold these
milk white haire of mine all so rent and torne, which
I have violently martyred in thy absence ? Canst thou
indure to see my dim eyes almost sightlesse through
age, to drop down teares at thy disobedient feet ? Ah
wherefore hast thou infringed the lawes of nature thus
cruelly to kill thy father's heart with grief, and to end
his dayes by thy vitious life ? Returne, returne, deare
childe, banish from thy breast these base actions, that I
may say I have a virtuous sonne ; and be not like the
viporous brood that works the untimely death of their
parents. And speaking these words, griefe so exceeded
the bounds of reason that he stood silent, and beginning
again to speake, teares trickled from his eyes in such
abundance, that they stayed the passage of his speech ;
the which being perceived by the ' Red Rose Knight,'
he humbly fell upon his knees, and in this sort spake
unto good Antonio : Most deare and reverend father,
if my offence doe seem odious in your eyes that I
deserve no forgiveness, then here behold now your
poore inglorious sonne, laying his breast open, ready
prepared to receive deaths remorselesse stroke from
your aged hands, as a due punishment for this my dis-

obedient crime ; but to be reclaimed from this honourable kind of life (I count it honourable, because it tasteth of manhood,) first shall the sun bring day from out the westerne heavens, and the silver moone lodge her brightnesse in the eastern waves, and all things else against both kind and nature turne their wonted course. Well then (quoth Antonio) if thy resolution be such, that neither my bitter teares, nor my faire intreaties may prevaile to withdraw thy vaine folly, then know (thou most ungratious impe) that thou art no son of mine, but sprung from the bowels of some untamed tyger, or wild lionesse, else wouldst thou humbly submit thyselfe to my reverent persuasions: from whence thou camest I know not, but sure thy brest harbours the tyranny of some monstrous tyrant, from whose loynes thou art naturally descended. Thou art no fruit of my body, for I found thee (in thy 'infancie) lying in the fields, cast out as a prey for ravening fowles, ready to be devoured by hunger-starved dogs ; but such was my pittie towards thee that I tooke thee up, and ever since have fostered thee as mine owne childe ; but now such is thy unbridled folly, that my kind courtesie is requited with extreame ingratitude, which sin above all others the immortall powers of heaven doe condemne, and the very devils themselves doe hate : therefore like a serpent henceforth will I spit at thee, and never cease to make incessant prayers to the justfull heavens, to revenge this thy monstrous disobedience.

These words being ended, he gave such an extreame

sigh, that his very heart brake with griefe, and he immediately dyed in the presence of the Red Rose Knight. For whose death hee made more sorrowfull lamentation, then Niobe did for her seven sonnes. But in recompence of old Antonios kind love, that preserved his infancie from the fury of ravenous fowles, he entombed him most stately in the citie of Lincoln, whose body hee sent thither by certaine passengers who hee had taken and withall a thousand pounds in treasures, to be bestowed upon a great bell to be rung at his funerall, which bell he caused to be called Tom a Lincolne, after his own name, where to this day it remaineth in the same citie. These passengers being as then rich merchants of London, having received the dead body of Antonio, and withall the treasure went with all speed into Lincolne and performed every thing as the Red Rose Knight had appointed.

The death of this good old man not only caused a generall sorrow through the whole citie, but strooke such an extreame griefe to old Antonio's wife, that she within few dayes yielded her life to the remorselesse stroke of the frowning destinies, and was buried in the same grave where her husband was intombed: whose death we will now leave to be mourned by their dearest friends, and likewise for brevitie sake, passe over many strata-gems which were accomplished by the Red Rose Knight and his followers upon Barnsdale Heath, and returne to King Arthur and his knights flourishing in the English Court.

CHAP. III.

Of the first Conquest of Portingale by the Red Rose Knight, and how hee was the first that ever triumphed in the Citie of London.

THE report of Tom a Lincolne's practises grew so generall amongst the vulgar sort of people, that at last it came to King Arthur's eares, who imagined in his princely mind, that he was sprung of his blood, and that hee carried lofty thoughts of honour planted in his brest, though shrowded under a countrey life; therefore, through kind nature hee purposed to have him resident in court with him, that he might daily see his lively sparkes of honour shew their resplendent brightnesse, yet in such obscurity, that he should not know the smallest motion of his parentage: therefore he called together three of his approved knights, namely, Lancelot du Lake, Sir Tristam, and Sir Triamore, and gave them in charge, if it were possible to fetch the Red Rose Knight unto his court, whose adventurous exploits hee hath heard so many times reported; and withall hee gave them generall pardon sealed with his privie seale for him and all his lawlesse followers.

This commission being received by the three worthie knights, they with all speed armed themselves in rich corselets, and strong habiliments of war, and so rode towards Barnsdale Heath; where being no sooner come, and delivered their message from the king, but the Red Rose Knight gave them honourable welcome, and

for three daies most royally feasted them under large canvasse tents, wherein they slept as securely as they had been in King Arthur's court, or in a strong castle of war. After this Tom a Lincolne selected out a hundred of his resolute followers, such as he best liked of, and came with Sir Lancelot and the rest to the English court, where King Arthur not onely gave him a friendly entertainment, but also installed him one of his Knights of the Round Table: and withall proclaimed a solemne turniament that should be holden in the honour of this new made knight, to which turniament assembled from other countries many princes, barons, and knights of high honour, which behaved themselves most nobly, and won great commendations of every beholder; but specially the Red Rose Knight, who for that day stood as chiefe champion against all commers. In that turniament, or first dayes deed of his knighthood, where onely by his valour and prowesse he overthrew three kings and thirty other knights, all famouzed for chivalry; whereby he obtained such grace in the English court, that he had by the king a paire of golden spurres put upon his feet; and generally of the whole assembly he was accounted one of the bravest knights that there lived in the world.

But now marke how frowning fortune ended their triumphes with unlucky newes; for the same day, before the knights had unbuckled their armours, their arrived a messenger, who certified King Arthur how his ambassadors was unjustly doneto death in the Portingale

Court, (which was an act contrary both to the faith of princes, and the law of armes.) For whose death king Arthur grew so enraged, that he swore by the honour of his bright renowne, and by the golden spur of true knighthood, the Portingales should repent that inhuman violence with the death of many thousand guiltlesse soules : and that babes unborne should have just cause to curse the first contriver of that unjust murther : therefore with all speede hee mustered up a mighty army of souldiers, and (because hee was continually molested with home-bred mutinies and treacherous rebellions, the which himselfe in person of force must pacifie,) appointed the Red Rose Knight as cheife generall over the armie mustered for Portingale. In which service hee accomplished so many famous exployts that hee was for ever after surnamed The Boast of England. For no sooner had hee the whole campe in charge, and aboard their ships, but hee proved the perfect patterne of an exquisite souldier ; such a one as all martiall captaines may learne to imitate ; for hee so circumspectly ordered his captaines, that in his campe was never knowne any brawle or mutinie. Hee was very courteous and liberall, doing honour to all men according to their deserts. Hee so painefully, and with such care instructed his souldiers, that at an instant, allways (if it were needfull) every man by the sound of a drumme or trumpet was found in his charge or quarter. And (to be briefe) his campe resembled one of the greatest cities in the world, for all kind of officers were

there found in order; and also a great number of merchants to furnish it with all manner of necessaries. He in no case permitted any robberies, private fighting, force or violence; but with severity punished those that were therein found guilty. His desire was, that his souldiers should glory in nothing so much as in martiall prowesse, vertue, and wisdom. He evermore gave them their pay without fraud or deceit. He honoured, he praised, he imbraced and kissed them, and withall kept them in awe and subjection: by which meanes his fame and honour grew so renowned, that his army dayly increased more and more; for when he first arrived upon the confines of Portingale his campe grew to be as great as ever was Cæsar's, when hee conquered the western world, and in matchlesse prowesse nothing inferiour unto his. So fortunate were his proceedings that hee made a great part of the provinces of Portingale desolate, not being intercepted by any, but spoyling every towne and city as hee went, untill such time as the Portingale king had gathered together a marvailous number of souldiers, both olde, and of much experience, by reason of the continuall warres that they had with the Turkish nation adjoyning neere unto them. But when the Portingale king (like an expert souldier) seeing that no way he might resist the English army, nor expell them his country, unlesse hee gave them present battaile, therefore trusting in his approved manhood, and the prowesse of his souldiers, he set his army in a readinesse, and so marched forward to meet the

Red Rose Knight, and his warlike followers, which at that time had pitched his campe in a large champaine plaine, adjoyning neere unto the city of Lishborne, whereat both these armies met; and setting them in order (as it became good captaines), there they beganne (in the breake of the day) the most cruell and terriblest battle that ever was heard of, or fought in that age, considering the number of both parties, their experience and pollicie, with the valiant courage and prowesse of their captaines.

In great danger continued this fight till the sun beganne to set with marvellous slaughter on both sides; yet remayned the victory doubtfull, declining neither to the Portingales, nor yet to the English; but at last (though long) the Portingales began to faint and flee, more indeed oppressed with the multitude than for any feare they received in the battle; for the most part of them with honour died manfully in the field, some taken prisoners, and the rest fled for their better safety: but now the Portingale king perceiving his souldiers begin to fly, with courage hee sought to withdraw them from flight, resisted in person valiantly the furious rage of the enemy; but in that enterprise he gained such and so many knockes, that at last he was unhorst, and for want of rescue, was forced to yield himselfe as prisoner, whereat the whole armies of the Portingales were discomfeited, and the victory fell to the Englishmen: the which being obtained, the Red Rose Knight with his armie entered into the citie of Lishborne, where the

common souldiers were enriched with wealthy spoyles, and the king's palace ransacked by the Red Rose Knight; where he tooke such prisoners as him best liked, and the reste (like an honourable souldier,) hee set at liberty, commanding that no violence should be profered any way.

After this setting his armie in a readinesse, he marched towards England, where after some few dayes travell, hee arrived with all his hoste in the westernne parts of Devonshire, and marching towards London, where against his comming the citicens, with the inhabitants of other villages, neere adjoyning, were that day seen in their most sumptuous and rich attire, every one of them endeavouring to place himselfe in some gallery or window, that the better and with more ease they might behold the triumphante returne of the Red Rose Knight. All the churches in London were on every side set open, hanged round about with most costly furniture: the streets were also most gloriously beset with greene boughes, and strowed with perfumes of no small value: and for the infinite multitude of people that were seene in the citie there was appointed a hundred whiflers most richly attired, to keepe the streets plaine and open, whereby the triumphs might have the easier passage, and for that the diversity of the shewes were so many, that they of necessity were constrained to part them into three severall dayes.

The first day hardly suffised in good order to bring in the banners, standards and ensignes of the conquerer,

the golden images, and tables of price, which were all brought in on carts, very curiously painted and trimmed.

On the second day came in the armour of the conquered king, as also of all the other Portingale lords; and as they were rich, bright, and glittering, so were they with most cunning ordered and couched in waggons. After these entered three thousand men in order, bearing nothing but money, openly to bee seene, and that in huge platters and vessels of silver, of which were three hundred and fifty in number, and foure of our men allotted to every vessell: the other brought in most artificiall tapestry works, beautified with gold and silver. And thus was the second dayes triumph ended in most pompous solemnity.

Upon the third day even at the rising of the sunne, with the first band entered (as a joyfull sound of conquest) an infinite number of flutes, drummes, and trumpets, with other like martiall and warlike instruments, sounding not after a most pleasant and sweet manner, but in most terrible sort, as it was possible to bee done, even in such order as they doe when they presently joyne battell. And after them came a hundred and twenty kine all white, having their hornes curiously gilded with gold, their bodies covered with vailes (which they accounted most sacred and holy) bearing also garlands of flowers upon their heads, driven by certaine young gentlemen, no less well favoured than gorgeously attired. After these followed the coach of the conquered

King of Portingale, with his owne armour layed thereon openly to be seene of all men. His crowne and royall scepter was layd in seemely order upon his armour. After this coach came prisoners on foote, with his owne naturall children, being little infants ; and after them followed a great troope of his servants and officers, as masters of his household, secretaries, ushers, controllers, chamberlaines, with other gentlemen of his court, all in a most sorrowfull manner, seeing themselves brought into such extremity and servitude, that they moved to compassion all such as beheld them. Of the kings children there were two boyes, and one girle ; of age so young and tender, that they had small understanding of their misfortune and misery.

In this triumph followed the father of his owne children (after the usage of his country) clad in black mourning garments, sorrowing likewise for his hard misfortune. Then followed sundry of his approved friends, which, beholding in that plight their unhappy prince brake out into teares and sighs so bitterly that their enemies themselves grieved at their mishaps.

After these followed one which carried certaine precious stones that had beene presented to the Red Rose Knight, from some ancient cities in Portingale who immediately followed in person triumphantly in his ivory charriot, appparelled in vestures of purple tissue, having a lawrell bough in his hand, and a crowne of the same upon his head. After him followed his owne souldiers both foot-men and horsemen all marching in most decent

order, armed with rich furniture, holding also each of them a lawrell bough in his hand, their ensignes and banners souldierlike displayed, sounding martiall melody, in honour of their triumphant captaine ; with many other like presidents most royal and magnificent. Thus in this gallant order marched they to the king's chapell, where in the presence of the king and his lords, (which came to honour and grace their triumphs) they gave thanks to God for their successfull victory ; and after solemn service was ended they departed to king Arthurs court, where every one, as well strangers as others were most royally feasted.

The Portingale king seeing his kind entertainment in the English court, where he was used more like a friend then an enemy, had small care to return home, but frolicked many a day amongst the English lords ; whose loves unto strangers be evermore most honourable. But so great were the courtesies that the noble King Arthur bestowed upon the Portingales, who for their proffered disgraces requited them liberally with honour ; and not onely sent them home ransomlesse, but promised to lende them ayde and succour from England if occasion required ; So bearing them company to the sea shore, hee most friendly committed them to the mercy of the winds and waves which were so favourable, that in short time they arrived safe in their owne country, where many a day after they remembered the honourable kindness of the Englishmen, and caused the chronicles of Portingale to record the renowne of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table.

CHAP. IV.

How the Red Rose Knight travelled from the King of Englands court, and how he arrived in the Fayerie land, where he was entertained by a Mayden Queene, and what hapned to him in the same country.

Now, after the Portingales were thus conquered, and sent home with great honour, the English king and his lords rested themselves many a day in the bowers of peace, leaving their armour rusting, and their pampered steedes standing in their stables forgetting their usuall manner of wrathfull warre : which idle ease greatly disconcerted the magnanimious Red Rose Knight, who thought it a staine to his passed glory, and a scandal to his princely mind to entertaine such base thoughts : and considering with himselfe how ignorant hee was of his true parents, and from whence hee was descended hee could not imagine ; therefore hee purposed to begin a new enterprise, and to travell up and down the world till hee had either found his father and mother or else yielded his life to natures course in that pretended journey : so going to the king, (full little thinking that he was sprung from so noble a stocke), craving at his graces hand, to grant him such liberty, for to try his knighthood in forraine countries, whereas yet did never Englishman make his adventure, and to eternize his name to all posterity, rather than to spend his life in such home-bred practises.

To this his honourable request the king, (though loath to foregoe his company yet because it belonged to

knightly attempts) hee gave him leave, and withall furnished him a shippe at his owne proper cost and charges, giving free license to all knights whatsoever to beare him company : amongst which number Sir Launcelot du Lake was the chiefest that proffered himselfe to that voyage, who professed such love to the Red Rose Knight, that they plighted their faiths like sworne brothers, and to live and die together in all extremities. So these two English knights, with the number of a hundred more, all resolute gentlemen, tooke leave of the king, and with all speed went a ship board : wherein being no sooner entered, but thepylthoisted sayle, and dis-anchored, and so committed their lives and fortunes to the pleasure of Neptunes mercie, upon whose watry kingdome they had not many dayes sayled, but Æolus brazen gates burst open, and the windes so violently troubled the swelling waves, that every minute they were in danger to end their lives in the bottome of the seas.

Three moneths the wind and the waters strove together for supremacie, during which time they saw no land, but were driven up and downe to what place the ever changing Destinies listed: so at last they sayled beyond the sunne, diverted onely by the light of the starres, not knowing which way to travell towards land; but in such extremity for want of victuall, that they were forced to land at a certaine island in the westernne parts of the world, inhabited onely by women ; where being no sooner on land, and giving God thanks for de-

livering them from that mortall perill, but the Red Rose Knight cast up his eyes towards the higher parts of the country, and espied more than two thousand women coming forth at a citie gate, all most richly armed with brest plates of silver, marching in trim array, like an army of well approved souldiers; the which number coming neare to the sea side they sent two of their damsels as messengers to the English knights, willing them as they loved their lives, presently to retire againe backe to the seas, for that was no countrey for their abode. But when the Red Rose Knight of England had understood the bold message of the two damsels he was sore abashed, (considering the number of armed women he saw before him, and the great dangers they had suffered before on the sea for want of victuall) that hee knew not in what manner hee was best to answer them; but having a good courage, hee at last spake to the two damsels in this sort; Right noble ladies, I have well understood your speeches; therefore, I desire you for to shew such favour unto wandering travellers as to tell us in what countrey fortune hath brought us to, and for what cause we are commanded by you to returne to the sea? Surely Sir Knight (answered one of the damsels) this countrey whereon you are arrived, it is not very bigge, but yet most fertile and commodious; and is called by the name of the Fayerie-Land: And now to shew you the cause why you are commanded to returne, this it is. Not many yeares agoe there reigned in this countrey a king which had to name Larmos, for wis-

dome and prowesse not his equall was found in any of these parts of the world. This king had such continuall war against the bordering Flanders, that upon a time he was constrained to muster for the same war all the men both young and old which were found in his kingdome, whereby the whole countrey was left destitute of men, to the great discontentment of the ladies and damśels that here inhabited; whereupon they finding themselves so highly wronged, living without the company of men, they generally assembled themselves together, with the daughter of King Larmos, which is called Cælia, nolesse in beautie then in virtue and wisdom. These ladies and damsels being gathered together, with a generall consent, dispatched certaine messengers to the king, and to their husbands, willing them to returne unto their countrey, and not to leave their wives and children in such extremity, without the comfort and company of man. Upon which the king answered, that hee had besieged his enemies in their townes of war; and before one man should returne home till he came with conquest, his countrey should be lost and made desolate, and the women given over to the spoyle of his enemies; which answer when the ladies had received, they tooke it in such evill part, that they conspired against their king and husbands, and put to death all the men children that were in the countrey; and after determined, when their husbands, fathers, and friends returned from the war, that they should the first night of their coming be slaine sleeping in their beds, and that never after they

should suffer man to enter into their countrey. After this conclusion, they crowned Cælia the king's daughter for their queene : and so afterwards when the king and his armie returned from the wars, this bloody murder was practised, and not a man left alive, but only the king reserved, whom Cælia would in no wise against nature murder ; but yet notwithstanding she delivered him into the hands of her chieftest ladies, which put him into a boat alone, and so sent him to sea to seeke his fortune. Whereas most noble knight this is the cause why you may not enter into our country, which if you doe, and not presently withdraw yourselves unto the sea, the ladies will suddenly give you a mervailous battell.

Now by the everliving God which Englishmen adore, (said the noble Red Rose Knight) such extremitie have wee suffered at sea, that we are like to perish and dye with hunger unlesse we find some succour at your hands ; and before we will end our lives with famine, we will enter battell with those ladies, and so dye with honour in the field ; yet this kindnesse doe we humbly desire at your hands, to returne unto your Queene, and certifie her of our poor estate and necessity, and that wee altogether instantly desire her, that if there bee any sparke of vertue or nobility harboured in her brest, that shee will have pitie upon us, and suffer us not to end our lives by such an unhappy kind of death. With this request the two damsels returned to the Queene and recounted from word to word the humble

suit of the Red Rose Knight and what extremity they were in: which when the queene understood, and that they were knights of England, the fame of which countrey she had so often heard reported, shee demanded what manner of people they were, and of what condition; suerly madam (answered one of the two damsels) I never in all my life saw more goodly men, nor better spoken: and it is to bee supposed they be the choyse of all humane people, and with their courteous demeanors are able to draw the merciless and savage nation to affect them.

The queene hearing the damsels so highly to commend the English knights, thinking also upon their request, began (in minde) to have pitie of their misadventures, andso instantly sent for them, and gave them free libertie to make their aboad in her country: which incontinently when the English knights heard, how they should receive a kinde welcome, and a friendly entertainment, grew so exceeding joyfull, as though heaven had sent them present comfort; so comming before the queene and her ladies, they saluted each other most courteously, and with great reverence. But when the vertuous queene beheld this noble company before her, in all humilitie, she delivered to a hundred of her ladies, the hundred English knights, and reserved the princely Red Rose Knight unto herselfe; and so were they brought to the queenes pallace, where every lady feasted her knight in most gallant sorte, and to their hearts contente. But now when the queene had he Red Rose

Knight in her chamber, and had beheld the exceeding beautie of the noble prince, shee tooke him by the hand, and led him into one of her chambers, where shee shewed him her riches and treasures : and after said unto him in this manner.

Most noble and valiant Englishman, these riches bee all onely at thy commandements, and also my body, which here I offer up as a gift and present to thy divine excellence ; and furthermore there is nothing of value which I am mistris of, but shall bee at thy disposing, to the intent that my love may be acceptable to thy gracious eyes. But when the Red Rose Knight perceived to what intent shee spake these gracious words, in this manner answered he her, saying.

Most deare princesse and fair queene of this maiden cuntry, I give you right humble thankses for these your courtesies, and by no means possible may I deserve this high honour you have graced me with.

Oh great knight (replyed then the queene) the smallest thought of your honourable mind is sufficient to recompence the uttermost of my deserts ; yet let me request this one thing at your noble hands, that never asked the like favour of any one before, for shee that never knew the least motion of love is now pricked with a hundred torments, and unlesse you quench the ardent affection wherewith my heart is fired, with the pleasant hopes of your comfortable smiles, I am like to die desperate, and then the world will accuse you of cruelty, in murdering a constant lady : but if it shall please you

to grant mee love, and to espouse mee according to Hymens holy rites ; here you shall rule sole king and be the lord of all this countrey.

My right deare lady (answered then the Red Rose Knight), you have done such pleasure to mee, and to my distressed followers in preserving us from famine, as I shall never requite it, though I should spend all the rest of my life in your service. And know most excellent princesse, that there is no adventure so dangerous, yet at your commandement would I practise to accomplish ; yet for to tye myselfe in wedlockes bonds, there is no woman in the world shall procure mee ; for untill I have finished an adventure which in my heart I have vowed. I will not linke my affections to any lady in the world. But thinke not (madam) that I refuse your love through disdaine ; for I sweare by the dignity King Arthur grac'd me with, I should thinke myselfe most fortunate if I had so faire and noble a lady as your divine selfe.

Most worthy knight (then answered the queene) I imagine that the gods have sente you into this countrey for two causes principally : The first is, that you and your followers should be preserved from death by my meanes ; the second is, that you should inhabit in this countrey leat it should in short time be left as a desert wilderness ; for it is inhabited onely by women, without a king, and have no other governour but me, which am their chiefe princesse ; and for so much as I have succoured you, so succour you this desolate citie, that it may be repeopled with your seed ; and in so doing you

shall accomplish a vertuous deed, and winne to your names an eternall memorie to all ensuing ages.

I confesse (quoth the Red Rose Knight) that you and your ladies have succoured me and my followers in our great necessitie ; and in recompense whereof, wee will employ all our endeavours to the repeopling againe of this countrey ; but in regard of the secret vow my heart hath made, I will not yield myselfe to your desires ; for if I should infringe my oath mine honour were greatly impaired ; and before I would commit that dishonourable fact, I would suffer the greatest torment that mans heart can imagine.

Incontinently when the love sicke queene heard this answer of the English knight, and perceived that he was firme to his purpose, shee took leave of him, and departed for that time : The Red Rose Knight likewise withdrewe himselfe into his chamber, pondring in his mind a thousand imaginations. But shee for her part was so troubled in mind, and so wounded with the darts of blind Cupid, that when the misty darknesse of night had covered the earth, shee laid her downe upon her bed where betwixt shame and her heart beganne a terrible battaille.

Her heart was encouraged, that shee should goe and lie with him ; but shame began to blush and withstood that perswasion ; by which meanes the battaille was great, and endured a long time ; but at last the heart was conqueror, and shame vanished and put to flight in such sort that the fairie queene rose from her bed and

went and laid downe by her beloved knight, where he slept; and being in the bed shee began fearfully to tremble, for shame still followed her unlawfull practises; where after her quivering heart began a little to be qualified with her trembling hand she awaked him, and after spake in this manner.

My most deare and affectionate friend though like a carelesse wretch I come unto thee apparelled with shame, yet let my true love colour this my infamous presumption, for your princely person and kingly demeanour, like adamants have drawne my steeled heart to commit this shamefull act; yet let not my fervent affection bee requitted with disdaine; and although you will not consente to bee my wedded lord and husband, yet let me bee thy love and secret friend; that a poore distressed queene may thinke herselfe happy in an Englishmans love.

When the noble knight heard the faire Cælia's voyce and felt her by his side, hee was so sore abashed, that hee wist not what to doe; but yet at last having the nature and courage of a man, hee turned to her, using many amorous speeches, embracing and kissing each other in such manner, that faire Cælia was conceived with child, and waxt great of a right faire sonne; of whom she was in processe of time safely delivered, as you shall heare discoursed of at large in the following historie:

But to be short, during the space of foure monethes, the fairy ladies lay with the English knights, and many

of them were conceived with their seede in such sorte; that the countrey was afterwards repeopled with male children, and what happened amongst them in the meane season I will passe over for this time; for the dayes and nights (that hee and the rest) passed on their wonted course, in which time their ship was replenished with all necessaries, and the Red Rose Knight summond together Sir Launcelot and the rest, and being assembled hee said unto them,

My good friends and countrymen, you know, that long time we have sojourned in this countrey spending our dayes in idle pastimes, to the reproach of our former glories: now my intent is, within these three dayes to depart this countrey, therefore let every man make himself in readinesse, for there is no greater dishonour to adventurous knights, than to spend their dayes in ladies bosomes.

When Sir Launcelot and the other English gentlemen heard the forward disposition of the Red Rose Knight, they were all exceeding joyfull, and answered him, that with great willingnesse they would all be ready at the time appointed.

But now when the fayerie ladies perceived the preparations that the English knights made for their departure, they grew exceeding sorrowfull, and complained one to another in most greivous manner; and amongst the reeste the queene was most displeased, who with a sorrowfull and sad heart, came unto the Red Rose Knight, and in this manner complained to him. Alas,

alas, my deare lord, have ye that tyrannous heart to withdraw yourselfe from me, and to forsake me before you see the fruit of your noble person, which is nourished with my blood. Deare knight behold with pitie my wombe, the chamber and mansion of your blood ; ah let that bee a meanes to stay you, that my child (as yet unborne) be not fatherlesse by your departure. And in speaking these words, shee began to weepe and sigh bitterly, and after to whisper secretly to herselfe in this order,

Oh you immortall heavens, how may mine eyes behold the departure of my joy ; for being gone all comfort in the world will forsake me, and all consolation fly from mee ; and contrawise all sorrow will pursue me, and all misfortune come against me. Oh what a sorrow will it be to my soule to see thee floating on the dangerous seas, where every minute perils doe arise ready to whelme thee in the bottomlesse ocean, and being once exempted from my sight, my heart for evermore lie in the beds of tribulation, under the coverture of mortale distresse, and betweene the sheets of eternall bewailings. Yet if there be no remedy, but that thou wilt needs depart, sweare unto me, that if ever thou dost accomplish thy pretended voyage (what it is I know not) that thou wilt returne againe to this countrey, to tell me of thy happy fortunes, and that mine eyes may once more behold thy lovely countenance, which is as delectable to my soule as the joyes of paradise.

When the noble English knight understood that the queene condescended to his departure, upon condition

of his returne, to which he solemnly protested, if the Gods gave him life and good fortune, to performe her request: whereby the fayrie queene was somewhat recomforted: and having great hope in the returne of her deare lorde, shee ceased her lamentation. And now (to abridge the story) the time came that the valiant Englishman should goe a shipboard, upon which day the Red Rose Knight and his followers tooke leave of the noble queene and her ladies, thanking them for their kind entertainments, and so went to the port of the sea, where they entred their ships, and so departed from the fayrie land. After this when Cælia had borne her babe in her wombe full forty weeks she was delivered of a faire sonne, who came afterwards to be called the Fayrie Knight, which for this time we will not touch, but refer it to the second part of this history.

CHAP. V.

What hapned to the English Knights, after their departure from the Fayrie Land.

WITH a prosperous wind sayled these English knights, many a league from the Fayrie Land, to their great contente and hearts desire, where every thing seemed to prognosticate their happy adventures; so upon a day when the sun shone cleare, and a gentle calme winde caused the sea to lye as smoothly as chrystall ice, whereby their ship lay floating on the waves, not able to remove; for whilst the dolphins danced upon the silver streames, and the red gild fishes leapt about the ship, the Red Rose Knight requested Sir Launcelot to drive

away the time with some courtly discourse, whereby they might not thinke their voyage over long. Unto which the good Sir Launcelot most willingly agreed; and although hee was a martiall knight, delighting to heare the relentlesse sound of angry drums, which thunders threats from a massaker, yet could hee like an oratour, as well discourse a lovers historie; therefore requesting the Red Rose Knight, and the other English gentlemen to sit downe and listen to the tale that followeth,

The Pleasant History which Sir Launcelot du Lake told to the Red Rose Knight, being a ship-board.

At that time of the yeare, when the birds had nipt away the tawny leaves, and Flora with her pleasant flowers, had inricht the earth, and incloathed the trees, herbes, and flowers, with natures tapestrie, when the golden sunne, with his glistring beames did glad mens hearts, and every leafe as it were did beare the forme of love, by nature painted upon it: this blessed time did cause the Grecian emperour to proclaime a solemne turniament to be holden in his court, which as then was replenished with many worthy and valiant knights; but his desire chiefly was, to behold his princely sonne, Valentine, to try his valour in the turniament.

Many were the ladies that repayred thither, to behold the worthy triumphs of this young prince; amongst which number came the beautifull Dulcippa, a mayden which as then waited upon the empresse, being daughter to a countrey gentleman.

This Dulcippa, like Apollos flower, being the fayrest virgin in that company, had so firmly settled her love upon the emperours son, that it was impossible to expell it from her heart. Likewise his affection was no lesse in fervencie then hers; so that there was a just equality in their loves and likings, though a difference in their birthes and callings.

This princely Valentine (for so was the emperours sonne called) entred the lists in costly armour most richly wrought with orient pearles, his crest incompassed with saphire stones, and in his hand a sturdie launce. Thus mounted upon a milke white steed, hee vaunted forth himselfe to try his warlike force; and in prauncing up and downe, hee many times (thorow his beaver) stole a view of his faire Dulcippas face; at which time there kindled in his breast two sundry lampes; the one was to win the honour of the day; the other, to obtaine the love of his mistresse. On the other side, Dulcippa did nothing but report the valiant acts of his prowesse and chivalrie, in such sort, that there was no other talke amongst the ladies, but of Valentines honourable attempts.

No sooner was the turniaments ended, and this love begun, but Dulcippa departed to her lodging, where sighes did serve as bellowes to kindle loves fire. Valentine in like manner being wounded to death, still roameth up and downe, to find a salve for his stanchlesse thirst; so seeks Dulcippa to restore her former liberty; for shée being both beloved, and in love, knew not the meanes to comforte herself. Sometimes shee did exclaime

against her wandering eyes, and wished they had been blind when first they gazed upon the beauty of princely Valentine. Sometimes in visions shee beheld his face cheerfull, smiling upon her countenance, and presently againe shee thought she saw his martiall hands, bathed all in purple blood, scorning her love, and former courtesies. With that shee started from her dreaming passion, wringing her tender hands, till floods of silver dropping teares-trinkled down her face; her golden hayre that had wont to be bound up in threds of gold, hung dangling downe about her ivory neck: the which in most outrageous sorts shee rent and tore, till that her hayre which before looked like burnisht gold, were dyed now in purple and vermilion blood. In this strange passion remained this distressed lady, till the golden sunne had three times lodged him in the western seas, and the silver moone her shining face in the pallace of the chrysell clouds. At this time a heavy slumber possessed all her senses; for shee, whose eyes before in three dayes, and as many nights, had not shut up their closets, was now lockt up in silente sleepe, lest her heart overburthened with grieffe, by some untimely manner should destroy itselfe.

But now returne we to the worthy Valentine, who sought not to pine in passion, but to court it with the best, considering with himselfe that a faint heart never gain'd faire lady; therefore he purposed boldly to discover his love to the fair Dulcippa, building upon a fortunate successe, considering that shee was but

daughter to a gentleman, and he a prince borne. So attiring himself in costly silkes, wearing in his haire an Indian pearl cut out of ruby red; on eyther side, a golden arrow thrust through a bleeding heart, to declare his earnest affection. In this manner went hee to his beloved lady, whom he found in company with other ladies waiting upon the empress, who taking her by the hand, he led her aside into a gallery neere adjoyning, where he began in this manner to expresse the passion of his love.

Sacred Dulcippa (quoth hee) in beauty brighter then glistering Cynthia, when with her beames she beautifies the vales of Heaven. Thou art that Cynthia that with thy brightnesse doth light my cloudy thoughts, which have many dayes been overcast with stormy showers of love; shine with thy beames of mercie on my minde, and let thy light conduct mee from the darke and obscure labyrinths of love. If teares could speake, then should my tongue keepe silence, therefore let my sighes bee messengers of true love. And though in words, I am not able to deliver the true meaning of my desires, yet let my cause begg pitie at your hands. Otherwise your deniall drownes my soule in a bottomlesse sea of sorrow: one of these two (most beauteous lady) doe I desire, either to give life with a cheerful smile, or death with a fatall frowne. Valentine having no sooner ended his loves oration, but shee with a scarlet countenance, returned him this joyfull answer.

Most noble prince, thy words within my heart have knit

a Gordian knot which no earthly wight may untie; for it is knit with faithfull love, and teares distilling from a constant minde. My heart, which never yet was subject to any one, doe I freely yield up into thy bosom, where it for evermore shall rest, till the fatall sisters cut our lives asunder; and in speaking these words they kissed each other as the first earnest of their loves. With that the empresse came thorow the gallerie, who espying their secret conference, presently moved in her secret hate, which shee intended to practise against the guiltlesse lady, thinking it a scandal to her sonnes birthe to match in marriage with one of so base a parentage; therefore purposing to crosse their loves with dismall stratagems, and dreary tragedies, shee departed to her chamber, where shee cloaked her treacheries up in silence, and pondered in her heart how shee might end their loves, and finish Dulcippas life. In this tragical imagination remained shee all that night, hammering in her head a thousand severall practices. But no sooner was the dreary earth comforted with the hot beames of Apollos fire, but this thristing empresse arose from her carefull bed, penning herselfe closely within her chamber, like one that made no conscience for to kill, she in all haste sent for a doctor of physicke, not to give physicke to restore health, but poyson for untimely death; who being no sooner come into her presence, but presently shee lockt her chamber doore, and with an angry countenance, staring him in the face, shee breathed this horrore into his harmlesse eares: Doctor

thou knowest how oft in secret matters I have used thy helpe, wherein as yet I never saw thy faith falsified ; but now amongst the rest I am to require thy ayd in an earnest businesse, so secret, that if thou dost but tell it to the whispering windes, it is sufficient to spread it through the whole world ; whereby my practises may be discovered, and I be made a noted reproach to all hearers. Madam, (quoth the doctor, whose heart harboured no thought of bloody deeds) what needs all these circumstances, where duty doth command my true obedience ; desist not therefore, gentle empresse to make mee privie to your thoughts ; for little did hee thinke her mind could harbour so vile a thought ; but having conjured most strongly his service, shee spake to him as followeth : Doctor, the love (nay rather raging lust) which I have spied of late betwixt my unnaturall sonne and proud Dulcippa may in shorttime (as thou knowest) bring a suddaine alteration of our state, considering that hee being borne a prince, and descended from a royall race, should match in marriage with a base and ignoble mayden, daughter but to a meane gentleman ; therefore if I should suffer his secret love to goe forward and seeke not to prevent it, the emperour might condemne mee of falsehood, and judge me an agent in this unlawfull love, which to avoid I have a practice in my head, and in thy hand it lyes to procure thy princes happinesse and countreys good. Dulcippas father (as thou knowest) dwells about three miles from my pallace, unto whose house I will this day send Dulcippa about such businesse

as I thinke best, when thou shalt be appointed, and none but thou to conduct her thither ; where in a thick and bushy grove, which standeth directly in the midway, thou shalt give her the cup of death, and so rid my heart from suspicious thoughts.

This bloody practice being pronounced by the em-
presse, caused such a terroure to enter into the doctors
minde that hee trembled forth this sorrowfull com-
plaint.

Oh you immortall powers of heaven, you giver of my
haplesse fortunes, why have you thus ordayned mee to
be the bloody murderer of a chaste and vertuous lady, and
the true patterne of sobriety ; whose untimely overthrow
if I should but once conspire, Dianas nymphes would
turne their wonted natures and staine their hands with
my accursed blood. Therefore most glorious em-
presse cease your determination for my heart will not suffer
my hand to commit so foul a villany.

And wilt thou not doe it then (replied the em-
presse with a minde fraught with rage and blood) : I do pro-
test (quoth shee) by heavens bright majestie, except
thou dost consent to accomplish my intent, thy head
shall warrant this my secrecie.

Stand not on termes, my resolute attempt is cleane
impatient of objections.

The doctor hearing her resolution, and that nothing
but Dulcippas death might satisfie her wrath, hee
consented to her request, (and purposed cunningly to
dissemble with the bloody quene) who believed that hee

would performe what shee so much desired : so departing out of her chamber, shee went to the guiltlesse lady sending her on this fatall message ; who like to hapless Bellerophon was ready to carry an embassage of her owne death. But in the meane time the doctor harboured in his brest a world of bitter woes, to thinke how vilely this virtuous lady was betrayed ; and considering in his minde how that he was forced by constraint to performe this tragedy ; therefore hee purposed not to give her a cup of poyson, but a sleeping drinke, to cast her into a trance, which shee should as a cup of death receive : as well to try her virtuous constancie as to rid himselfe from so hainous a crime.

But now returne wee to Dulcippa, who being sped of her message, went with the doctor walking on the way, where all the talke which they had was of the liberall praise of Prince Valentine, who remained in court, little mistrusting what had happened to his beloved lady, and shee likewise ignorant of the hurt that was pretended against her life ; but being both alone together in the wood, where nothing was heard but chirping birds, which with their voices seemed to mourne at the ladies misfortune. But now the doctor breaking off their former talke, tooke occasion to speake as followeth :

Man of all creatures (most virtuous lady) is most miserable, for nature hath ordained to every bird a pleasant tune, to bemoane their mishaps, the nightingale doth complaine her rape and lost virginity within the

desart groves ; the swanne doth likewise sing a dolefull heaue tune awhile before shee dies, as though heaven had inspired her with some foreknowledge of things to come. You madam now must sing your swan-like song ; for the pretty birds (I see) doe droope their hanging heads, and mourne to thinke that you must die. Marvaile not madame, the angry queene will have it so ; accurst am I in being constraind to bee the bloody instrument of so tyrannous a fact. Accurst am I that have ordained that cup, which must by poyson stanch the thirst of the bloody empresse ; and most accurst am I that cannot withstand the angry fates, which have appointed mee, to offer violence unto virtue. And in speaking these words hee delivered the cup into the ladies hands ; who like a lambe that was led to the slaughter, used silence for her excuse. Many times lift shee up her eyes towards the sacred throne of heaven, as though the Gods had sent downe vengeance upon her guiltlesse soule, and at last breathed forth these sorrowfull lamentations :

Never (quoth shee) shall vertue stoope to vice. Never shall death affright my soule, nor never poyson quench that lasting love, which my true heart doth beare to princely Valentine ; whose spirit (I hope) shall meet mee in the joyfull fields of Elizium, to call those ghosts, that dyed for faithfull love, to beare mee witnessse of my faith and loyalty ; and so taking the cup she said ; come, come, thou most blessed cup, wherein is contained that happy drinke which gives rest to

troubled minds. And thou most blessed wood, beare witness that I mixe this banefull drinke with teares distilling from my bleeding heart. These lips of mine that had wont to kisse Prince Valentine shall now most willingly kisse this ground, that must receive my corse. The author of my death Ile blesse ; for she honours mee in that I die for my sweet Valentines sake. And now doctor to thee (being the instrument of this my death) I doe bequeath all earthly happinesse : and here withall I drinke to Valentines good fortune : so drinking of the sleeping potion shee was presently cast into a trance, which shee poore lady supposed death. The doctor greatly admiring at her virtuous mind, erected her body against an aged oake, where he left her sleeping, and with all speed returned to the hatefull queene, and told her that he had performed her majesties command ; who gave him many thanks, and promised to requite his secresie with a large recompense.

But now speake we againe of Prince Valentine, who had intelligence, how the onely comfort of his heart had ended her dayes by poysons violence, for which cause, he leaves the court, and converted his rich attire to ruthfull roabes ; his costly coloured garments, to a homely russet coat ; and so travelling to the solitary woods, he vowed to spend the rest of his dayes in a shepherds life ; his royall sceptre was turned into a simple sheepehooke, and all his pleasure was to keepe his sheepe from the teeth of the ravenous wolves.

Three times had glistering Phoebe renewed her

horned wings, and decked the elements with her smiling countenance; three months were passed, three moones had likewise runne their wonted compasse, before the Grecian emperour mist his princely sonne, whose want was no sooner bruted through the court, but hee ecchoed forth this horroure to himselfe.

What cursed planet thus indirectly rules my haplesse course? or what uncouth dryery fate hath bereaved me of my princely son; Jove send downe thy burning thunder bolts, and strike them dead that be procurers of his want; but if (sweet Venus) hee be dead for love, hover his ghost before mine eyes, that hee may discover the cause of his afflictions; but contrariwise, if his life be finished by the fury of some murtherous minde, then let my exclamations pierce to the justfull majestie of heaven, that never sun may shine upon his hated head, which is the cause of my Valentines decay; or that the angry furies may lend me their burning whips, incessantly to scourge their purple soules, till my sonnes wrongs be sufficiently revenged. Thus, or in such a like franticke humour ranne he up and downe his palace, till reason pacified his outrageous thoughts, and by persuasion of his lords, he was brought into his quiet bed. Mean space, Diana (the queen of Chastitie) with a traine of beautiful nymphs, by chance came through the wood where Dulcippa was left in her trance, in which place, rousing the thickets in pursuit of a wild hart, the Queen of Chastity espyed the harmlesse lady, standing against a tree, and beheld her sweet breath to

passee through her closed lips, at whose presence the queene awhile stood wondering at ; but at last with her sacred hand she awaked her, and withall asked the cause of her trance, and by what meanes shee came thither ; which poore awaked lady being amazed both at her sudden majestie, and the strangenesse of her passed fortune and distresse, with farre fetcht sighes shee related what hapned to her in those desart woods. The heavenly goddess being moved with pitie, with a most smiling voyce cheered her up, and with a lilly taken from the ground shee wiped the teares from off Dulcippas tender cheeks, which like a river trickled from her chrystall eyes. This being done, Diana with an angels voyce, spake unto her as followeth :

Sweet virgin, (for so it seemeth thou art) farre better would it befit thy happy estate(happy I terme it)having past so many dangers, to spend the remnant of thy life amongst my traine of nymphs,whereas springeth nothing but chastity and purity of life. Dulcippa, though in her love both firm and constant, yet did she condescend to dwell with Dianas nymphs ; where now instead of parley with courtly gallants, shee singeth songs, carols, and roundelayes ; instead of pen and ink, wherewith shee was wont to write love letters, shee exerciseth her bow and arrowes to kill the swift fat deare ; and her downy beds are pleasant groves where pretty lambs do graze.

But now returne wee againe to the raging emperour, who sifted the matter out in such sorte that hee found the empresse guilty of her sonnes want, and the doctor

to be the instrument of Dulcippas death ; who being desperat, (like one that utterly detested the cruelty of the empresse) would not allege that hee had but set the lady in a trance, but openly confess'd that he had poyson'd her, and for that fact was willing to offer up his life, to satisfie the law, therefore the angry emperour sweares, that nothing shall satisfy his sonnes revenge-ment but death : and thereupon, straightly commanded the empresse to be put in prison, and the doctor likewise to be lockt in a stronge tower ; but yet because shee was his lawfull wife, and a princesse borne, he something sought to mitigate the law, that if any one within a twelvemonth and a day would come and offer himselfe to combat in her cause against himselfe, which would be the appealant champion, she should have life ; if not to be burnt to ashes in sacrifice of his sons death ; all which was performed as the emperour had commanded.

But now all this while the poor prince lives alone within the woods, making his complaints to the flocks of sheepe, and washing their wool with his distressed teares ; his bed whereon his body rested was turned into a sunburnt banke, his chair of state covered with grasse ; his musicke the whistling winds ; the rethoricke pitifull complaints and moanes, wherewith hee bewailed his passed fortunes, and the bitter crosses of his unhappy love.

The solitarie place wherein this prince remained was not farr distant from the grove, where Dulcippa led her sacred life ; who by chance in a morning at the sunnes

uprising, attyred in green vestements, bearing in her hand a bow bended, and a quiver of arrowes hanging at her backe, with her hayre tyed up in a willow wreath, lest the bushes should catch her golden tresses to beautifie their branches ; in this manner coming to hunt a savage hart, shee was surprised by a bloody satyre bent to rape, who with a bloody mind pursued her ; and comming to the same place where Prince Valentine fed his mourning lambes, hee overtooke her, whereat shee gave such a terrible shriek in the wood, that shee stirred up the shepherds princely mind to rescue her ; but now when the bloody satyre beheld a face of majesty shrowded in a shepherds cloathing, immediately he scudded through the woods more swift than ever the fearful deare did run.

But now gentle reader, here stay to reade a while, and thinke upon the happy meeting of these lovers, for surely the imagination thereof will lead a golden wit into the labyrinth of heavenly joyes ; but being breathlesse in avoyding passed dangers, they could not speake a word, but with steadfast eyes stood gaping at each other in the face ; but comming againe to their former senses, Valentine brake silence with this wavering speech :

What heavenly wight art thou (quoth hee) which with thy beautie hath inspired mee ?

I am no goddess, (replyed shee againe) but a virgin vowed to keepe Diana company, Dulcippa my name : a lady sometime in the Grecian court, whilst happy fortune

smiled ; but being crossed in love here doe I vow to spend the remnant of my dayes. And with that, hee catching the word out of her mouth said :

Oh you immortall gods, and is my Dulcippa yet alive ; I, I, alive, I see shee is, I see that sweet celestiall beautie in her face, which hath banished deepe sorrow from my heart ; and with that kissing her, he said ; see see fairest of all faires that nature ever made, I am thy Valentine that unhappy love, the Prince of Greece, the emperoures true sonne, who for thy lovely sake am thus disguised, and for thy love have left the gallant court for this sweet and homely country-life. With that shee tooke him about his manly necke and breathed many a bitter sigh into his bosome ; and after with weeping teares discoursed all her passed dangers, as well the crueltie of the empresse, as of the vertuous deed of the good doctor. And having both recounted their passed fortunes they consented (disguised as they were) to travell to the Grecian court to see if the destinies had transformed the state of the emperour or his regiment ; for now no longer outcries, nor heavy stratagems or sorrowfull thoughts sought to pursue them ; but smiling fortune, gracious delights, and happy blessings. Now fortune nevermeant to turne her wheele againe to crosse them with calamities, but intended with her hand to power into their hearts oyle of lasting peace. Thus whilst Apolloes beames did parch the tender twigs, these two lovers sate still under the branches of a shadie beech, recounted still their joyes and pleasures ; and

sitting both thus upon a grassy bancke, there came travelling by them an aged old man, bearing in his withered hand a staffe to stay his benumbed body ; whose face when Prince Valentine beheld, with a gentle voyce hee spake unto him in this sort :

Father, God save you ; how hapneth that you wearied with age, doe travell through the desart groves, befitting such ascan withstand the checks of fortunes ficklenesse ; come faire old man, sit down by us, whose minds of late were mangled with grieffe, and crost with worldly cares. This good old hermite hearing the courteous request of the prince sate downe by them, and in sitting downe hee trembled forth this speech :

I come (young man) from yonder citie, where as the emperour holds a heavie court, and makes exceeding sorrow for the losse of his eldest sonne, and for a lady, which is likewise absent ; the empresse being found guilty of their wants is kept close prisoner, and is condemned to be burnt unlesse within a twelve moneth and a day, she can get a champion that will enter battaill in her cause ; and with a doctor also is adjudged to suffer death. Great is the sorrow that there is made for this noble prince, and none but commends his virtue : and withall the deserved prayses of the absent lady.

Father (replied then the prince) thou hast told us tidings full of bitter truth, able to inforce an iron heart to lament ; for cruell is the doome, and most unnaturall the emperoure to deale so hardly with his queene.

Nay, (quoth the old man) if shee be guilty I cannot

pitie her, that will cause the ruine of so good a prince ; for higher powers must give example unto their subjects.

By lady, father (quoth the princely shepheard) you can well guesse of matters touching kings ; and to be a witnesse of this accident, wee will presently goe into the court, and see what shall betide unto this distressed queene. This being said, they left the aged man, and so travailed towards the Grecian court ; and by the way, these lovers did consult, that Prince Valentine attired like a shepheard, should offer himselfe to combat in his mothers cause, and so to expresse the kinde love and nature which was lodged in his princely breast. But being no sooner arrived in the court, and seeing his father to take the combat upon himselfe, presently hee kneeled downe and like an obedient sonne discovered himselfe, and withall Dulcippas strange fortunes ; whereupon the empresse and the doctor were presently delivered, and did both most willingly consent to joyne these two lovers in the bands of marriage ; where after they spent their dayes in peace and happinesse.

This pleasant discourse being ended, which Sir Launcelot had told to the exceeding pleasure of the greatest company, but especially of the Red Rose Knight, who gave many kind thanks. At this time the winds began to rise and blow chearfully, by which they sayled on their journey successfully from one coast to another, till at last they arrived upon the coasts of Prester Johns Land, which was in an evening when the day began to lose her

chrySTALL mantle, and to give place to the sable garments of gloomy night, where they cast anchor unseene of any of that countreys inhabitants.

CHAP. VI.

What happened to the Red Rose Knight and his company in the court of Prester John, and how the Red Rose Knight slew a dragon with three tongues that kept a golden tree in the same countrey; with other attempts that happened.

THE next morning by the breake of day the Red Rose Knight arose from his cabbin, and went upon the hatches of the ship, casting his eyes round about to see if he could espy some towne or citie where they might take harbour; and in looking about he espied a great spacious citie, in the middle whereof stood a most sumptuous pallace, having many high towers standing in the area, like the Grecian pyramides, the which hee supposed to be the pallace of some great potentate; therefore calling Sir Lancelot (with two other knights) unto him, he requested them to goe up into the citie, and to enquire of the countrey, who was the govournour thereof; the which thing they promised to doe, so arming themselves (as it was convenient, being strangers in that countrey) they went up into the citie, where they were presently presented unto Prester John, who, (being alwayes liberall and courteous unto strangers) gave them a royall entertainment, leading them up into his pallace; and having intelligence that they were Englishmen,

and adventurous travellers, hee sent foure of his knights for the rest of their company, desiring them in the knights behalfe, to returne to the court, where they should have a friendly welcome, and a knightly entertainment.

Thus when the Red Rose Knight had understood the will of Prester John by his foure knights, the next evening with his whole company hee repayred to the citie, which was right noble and faire, and although it was night, yet were the streets as light as though it had beene mid-day, by the cleare resplendent brightness of torches, cressetts, and other lights which the citizens ordayned to the entertaining of the English knights.

The streets through which they passed to go to the kings pallace, were filled with people as burgomasters, knights and gentlemen, with ladies and beautifull dam-sells, which in comely order stood beholding their coming. But when the Red Rose Knight was entred the pallace he found the renowned Prester John, sitting upon his princely throne, under propt with pillars of Jasper stone; who after hee had given them an honourable welcome, hee tooke the Red Rose Knight by the hand and led him up into a large and sumptuous hall, the richest that ever hee had seen in all his life: but in going up certaine stayres hee looked in at a window, and espyed faire Anglitora, the kings daughter sporting amongst other ladies, which was the fayrest mayd that ever mortall eye beheld, and I thinkethat nature herselfe

could not frame her like ; but being entred the hall they found the tables covered with costly fare ready for supper : when as the English knights were set at the kings table in company of Prester John and Anglitora, with other ladies attending(having good stomachs)they fed lustily ; but Anglitora, which was placed right over against the Red Rose Knight,fed onely uponhis beauty and princely behaviour, not being able to withdraw her eyes from his divine excellencie ; but the renowned Prester John for his part spent away the supper time with many pleasant conferences touching the countrey of England and King Arthurs princely court, the report of which, fame had so often sounded in his eares. But amongst all other devices hee told the English knights of a tree of gold, which now grew in his realme, and yearly brought golden fruit, but hee could not enjoy the benefit thereof, by reason of a cruell dragon that continually kept it ; for the conquest of which golden tree he had many times solemnly proclaymed through that part of the world, that if any knight durst attempt to conquer it, and by good fortune bring the adventure to an end, hee should have in reward thereof, his daughter, the faire Anglitora in marriage ; to which many knights resorted, as well of foraigne countreyes as his own nation, but none proved so fortunate to accomplish the wished conquest, but lost their lives in the same adventure ; therefore I fully believe, if all the knights in the world were assembled together, yet were they all unsufficient to overcome that terrible dragon.

With that the Red Rose Knight with a bold courage stood up and protested by the love he bore unto his countreys king he would performe the enterprise or lose his life in the attempt ; so in this resolution hee remained all supper time, which being ended the English knights were brought into divers chambers ; but amongst the rest the Red Rose Knight and Sir Launcelot were lodged neere to the fayre Anglitora, for there was nothing betwixt their chambers, but a little gallery : into which being come and no sooner laid in their beds, but the Red Rose Knight began to confer with Sir Launcelot in this manner :

What thinke you (quoth hee) of the enterprise I have taken in hand ? Is it not a deed of honour and renowne ? Surely (replyed Sir Launcelot) in my judgement it is an enterprise of death ; for every man in this country adjudgeth you overcome and destroyed, if you but once approach the sight of the dragon ; therefore be advised, and goe not to this perilous adventure for you can obtaine nothing thereby but reproach and death ; and doubtlesse they are counted wise that can shun the misadventures, and keepe themselves from danger.

But then (quoth the Red Rose Knight) shall I falsifie my promise, and the promise of a noble minde ought still to be kept ; therefore ere I will infringe my vow I have made, I will be devoured by the terrible dragon ; and in speaking these words they fell asleepe.

During which time of their conference, fayre Anglitora stood at their chamber doore and heard all that

had passed betwixt them, and was so surprised with the love of this gentle knight, that by no meanes shee could restraîne her affections ; and returning to her chamber casting herselfe upon her bed, thinking to have slept, but could not, she begun to say secretly to herselfe, this sorrowfull lamentation :

Alas mine eyes what torment is this you have put my heart unto ; for I am not the woman that I was wont to be, for my heart is fired with a flame of amorous desires, and is subject to the love of this gallant English knight, the beautie of the world, and the glory of Christendome. But fond foole that I am, wherefore doe I desire the thing that may not be gotten, for I greatly feare that he is already betrothed to a lady in his owne countrey. And furthermore his mind is garnished with princely cogitations, that I may not enjoy his love ; and hee thinketh no more of me, then on her that he never saw. But grant that hee did set his affection upon me, yet were it to small purpose, for he is resolved to adventure his life, in the conquest of the golden tree, where he will soone be devoured by the terrible dragon. Ah, what a griefe and sorrow will it be to my heart, when I shall heare of his untimely death, for hee is the choice of all nature, the prince of nobilitie, and the flowre of worship : for I have heard him say, that hee had rather die honourably in accomplishing his vow, than to returne with reproach into England. Which happy countrey if these eyes of mine might but once behold, then were my soule possessed with terrestriall joyes.

Anglitora with these words fell asleepe, and so passed the night away till the day came ; who no sooner with his bright beames glistered against the pallace walls, but the Red Rose Knight arose from his bed, and armed himselfe in great courage, ready for the adventure ; where, after he had taken leave of the king, and all the rest of his English friends, he departed forth of the citie towards the golden tree, which stood in a low valley, some two miles from the kings palace.

This morning was fayre and cleare, and not a cloud was seene, the elements and the sunne cast his resplendent beams upon the earth ; at which time the ladies and damsels mounted upon the highest towers in the pallace, and the common people came up to the battlements and walls of churches, to behold the adventure of this valiant knight, who as then went most joyfully on his journey, till he came to the vale of the golden tree, wherein being no sooner entred, but he beheld a most terrible and cruell dragon come springing out of his hollow cave. This dragon was farre more bigger than a horse, in length full thirtie foot, the which incontinently as soone as hee was out of his cave, began to raise his necke, set up his eares, and to stretch himselfe, opened his throate, and casting forth thereat most monstrous burning flames of fire : then the Red Rose Knight drew out his good sword, and went towards him, whereat the monster opened his terrible throat, whereout sprang three tongues, casting forth flaming fire in such sort, that it had almost burnt him. The first blow that the

knight stricke, hit the dragon betwixt the two eyes so furiously that he staggered ; but being recovered, and feeling himselfe most grievously hurt, he discharged from his throat such abundance of thick fuming smoake that it blinded the knight in such sort, that hee saw nothing : but yet, notwithstanding, hee lifted up his sword, and discharged it upon the dragon, where hee imagined his head was, and stricke so furious a blow, that hee cut off his three tongues close by their roots ; by which the dragon endured such marvellous paine, that hee turned his body so suddenly round, that his tayle smote the valiant knight a mighty blow upon his backe, whereby he fell downe upon the sands : being thus overthrowne, hee was in minde most marvellously ashamed ; but after awhile having recover'd himselfe hee ran to the dragon againe, and with his good sword smote such a terrible blow upon his tayle, that it cut it off in the middle ; the which piece was seven foot in length. The dragon through the great paine that hee felt, came and incountered the knight in such a fashion, that hee beat him downe to the ground, and after stood over him as though hee had beene dead ; but the knight tooke his sword, and underneath him thrust it up to the hilt so farre that it pierced his heart ; which when the dragon felt, as smitten to death, began to run away with the sword sticking in his belly, thinking to have hidden himselfe in his cave, but his life departed before he could get thither. Incontinently when the Red Rose Knight had rested himselfe, and saw that the dragon

was dead, he recomforted himselfe, and went and drew out his sword from his belly, which was all to bestained with his blacke blood, and after tooke the dragons three tongues and stucke them upon his sword ; and likewise pulled a branche from the golden tree, which he bore in his hand ; and so in triumph went towards the citie, and being come within the sight thereof, he lifted up the golden branch into the ayre as high as hee could, that it might glister in the sunne for the people to behold, (which stood upon high turrets, expecting his comming,) who perceiving it with great admiration, began to wonder. Some there were that gathered greene herbes and flowers, and strewed the way, whereas the knight should passe, to goe to the king's pallace, saying, that all honour ought to be given to so noble and glorious a conqueror.

Fayre Anglitora amongst all other, was most joyfull, when shee beheld the glistering brighnesse of the golden branch, and commanded her waiting maids to put on their richest attires, to solemnize the honour of that excellent victory.

And to conclude he was met at the citie gate, with the melodie of drums and trumpets, and so conducted to the kings pallace, where he was right honourably entertained of Prester John and his nobles. Surely there is no man so eloquent, that can discourse by writing, the great joy that Anglitora tooke at his returne ; and generally the whole inhabitants had thereat exceeding pleasure.

But now when the valiant Red Rose Knight had

entred the hall, and had set the golden branch upon an ivory cupboard richly furnished with costly plate, the English knights and many of the ladies began to dance most joyfully, and to spend the time in delicious sports, till supper was ready, and then the king and the Red Rose Knight was set, and with them the noble and faire Anglitora, Launcelot du Lake, and other English knights ; where (all supper while) there was no other conference holden, but of the valiant encounters of the Red Rose Knight, who for his part did nothing but make secret love signes to faire Anglitora.

What shall I make long circumstances ? The supper passed, and the houre came that the generall company withdrew them into their chambers ; the Red Rose Knight was conducted to his lodging by many noblemen and others, which brought the golden branch after him, and so bequeathed him for that night, to his silent rest. But presently after the noblemens departure, Anglitora entered into his chamber, bearing in her hand a silver bason full of warme perfumed waters, the which shee had provided to wash the dragons blood from his body ; which when the Red Rose Knight perceived, and thinking upon the kind love shee proffered him, put off his clothes, and made himselfe ready to wash. Faire Anglitora being attired in a white frocke without sleeves, turned up her smocke above her elbows, and so with her owne hands washed the body of the Red Rose Knight.

But now when this gentle bachelor beheld her lovely body, her faire and round breasts, the whitenesse of her

flesh, and that hee felt her hands marveilous soft, hee was so much inflamed with the ardent desire of love, that in beholding her beauty, he began to embrace her, and kissed her many times most courteously ; and so after when hee had beene well washed, Anglitora caused him to lie in his bed, beholding his well formed limbes, of colour faire and quicke, and could not turne her eyes from his sight: thus as they were beholding each other without speaking any word, at last the noble knight spake to her in this manner :

Most deare lady, you know that by this conquest I have deserved to be your husband, and you, through kind love, to be wife ; whereby I may say that you are mine, and I am yours : and of our two bodies there is but one. Therefore I require you to seale up the first quittance of our loves, which is, that wee two for this night might sleepe together ; and so accomplish the great pleasure that I have so long wished for.

Ah most noble knight (answered the faire lady) what in mee lyeth (that may bring you the least motion of content) shall with all willingnesse be performed ; but yet I conjure you by the promise of knighthood, that you will save mine honour, lest I be made a scandall to my fathers glory.

There is no man in the world (quoth he) that shall preserve thine honour more than I. What if you sleepe this night with me in bed, doe you any more than your dutie, in that I am your husband, and best beloved friend.

My deare love (replied shee againe) there is no pleasure I will deny yee ; but for this night you shall have patience ; for I will never yield up the pride of my virginity till my father hath given me in marriage ; and therefore I desire you, that to-morrow you will request that favour at his hands ; which being granted and performed then accomplish your content.

When the Red Rose Knight had understood his ladies mind, hee like an honourable gentleman was content to obey her request. What shall I say more ? but that the night drew on to the wonted time of sleepe, which caused these two lovers (for the time) to breake off company. Here slept the Red Rose Knight till the next morning, which at the breake of day was presented with a consort of musicke, which the king himselfe brought into his chamber. Their melody so highly delighted his minde, that hee threw them a gold chaine, which was wrapped about his wrist ; a gift plainly expressing the bounty that beautified his princely breast. The musicians being departed, hee arose from his rich bed, and went unto the king, whom hee found as then walking in a pleasant garden ; of whom hee required his daughter in marriage, in recompence of his adventure ; the which request so displeased the king, that all his former courtesies was exchanged into sodaine sorrow, and would by no means consent that Anglitora should be his betrothed spouse ; and answered, that first hee would lose his kingdome, before shee should be the wife of a wandring knight.

The noble Red Rose Knight when he understood the unkind answer of Prester John, (all abashed) went unto Sir Launcelot and his other friends, and certified them of all things that had happened, who counselled him that the next morning they should depart.

After this they went to the king and thanked him for the high honour hee had graced them with ; and after that, went and visited their ship, where for that day they passed the time in pleasure ; and so when the scouling night approached, the Red Rose Knight went to the faire Anglitora, and certified her of the unkind answers of her cruell father, whereat shee grew sorrowfull, and greived in mind ; but at last better considering with herselfe, shee yeilded her fortune fully at his pleasure, promising that for his love shee would forsake both country, parents, and friends, and follow him to what place soever hee pleased to conduct her. And it is to be supposed that this night the faire Anglitora tooke all the richest jewells that shee had, and trussed them in a fardle ; and so when it was a little before day, shee came unto the Red Rose Knight and awaked him, who presently made him ready, and so departed secretly from his chamber, till they came to their ships, where they found all the rest of the English knights ready to depart. So when they were all aboard they hoisted sayle, and departed from the port. To whose happy journey wee will now leave them for a time, and speake of the discontents of Prester John, who all that night, was exceeding sorrowfull for the unkind answers

which hee had given to the Red Rose Knight, and so melancholy that hee could neither sleepe nor rest; but at the last hee concluded with himselfe, that hee would goe and convey the English knights (at their departing) unto their ships; to the end that being in other countries they might applaud his courtesies used to strangers.

So in the morning hee arose and went to the chamber where the Red Rose Knight was lodged, whom hee found departed contrary to his expectation. After that hee went into his daughters chamber, where he found nothing but relentlesse walls, which in vaine hee might speake unto; whose absence drove him into such a desperate mind, that hee suddenly ran to the sea coasts, where hee found many of his citizens, that shewed him the ships wherein the English knights were, which was at that time from the port or haven more then halfe a mile. Then the king (weeping tenderly) demanded of them if they had seene his daughter Anglitora? to whom they answered that they had seene her upon the ship hatches in company of the Red Rose Knight. At which the king bitterly lamented, beating his brest, and tearing his milke white haire from his head, using such violence against himselfe that it greatly greived the beholders.

At that time there was many of his lords present, who by gentle persuasions withdrew him from the sea coasts to his pallace, where he many dayes after lamented the disobedient flight of his daughter.

CHAP. VII.

How Cælia the Queene of the Fayrie Land was found dead floting upon the waves of the sea; with other things that happened to the English knights.

MANY dayes the windes blew cheerfully in such sort that the English ships were within kenning of the Fayrie Land; at which Sir Launcelot took an occasion to speake unto the Red Rose Knight, and put him in remembrance how hee had promised Cælia to returne into her countrey, unto which hee answered and sayd, that hee would keepe promise if the destinies did afford him life. And there upon commanded the master pilot to make thither ward; but the windes not being willing raised such a tempest on the sea that the ship was cast a contrary way, and the mariners by no meanes possible could approach the Fayrie Land. At which time the noble Queene Cælia stood by the sea side, upon a high rocke beholding the English ship as it passed by, as her usuall manner was, every day standing expecting her deare lords returne, many times making this bitter lamentation to herselfe:

Ah gentle Neptune thou god of seas and windes, where is my desired love? bring him againe unto mee, that day and night doe weepe for his company. Thus shee complained at the same instant when her lovers ship sayled by; for surely shee knew it by the banners and ensignes which were displayed in the winde; but when the poore lady perceived the ship to turne from her, shee

was sore abashed and dismayed. Instead of joy shee was forced to weepe teares; and instead of singing was constraigned to make sorrowfull complaints. In this manner shee abode there all that ensuing night, and caused fires and great lights to be made on the shore, thinking thereby to call the Red Rose Knight unto her.

This order kept shee every day and night for the space of six weekes, wayling the want of him, whom shee loved more deare than her own heart; but when the six weekes were past, and that the Fayrie Queene perceived that shee should have no tydings of her love, shee went from the rockes (all in despaire) into her chamber; where being entred shee caused her sonne to be brought unto her, whom shee kissed many times, for the love shee bore unto his father; and after beholding the little infant crossing her armes, with a sigh coming from the bottome of her heart, she sayd; Alas my deare sonne, alas thou canst not speake to demand tydings of thy father, which is the bravest knight, the most vertuous and the most valiant in armes that God ever formed. Oh where is nature (sweete babe) that should enjoyne thee to weepe, and myselfe more than thee, for the losse of so brave a prince; whose face I never more shall see! Oh cruell and unkind fortune! my heart hath concluded that I goe and cast myselfe headlong into the sea, to the intent that if the noble knight bee there buried, I may lye in the same sepulcher or tombe with him; where contrariwise if hee bee not dead, that the same sea that brought him hither

alive, bring me to him being dead. And to conclude, before I commit this desperate murder upon mysele, with my blood I will write a letter, which shall be sewed to my vestements or attire, to the intent that if ever my body bee presented to the Red Rose Knight, that then this bloody letter may wnesse the true love that I bore him, to the houre of my death.

Many ladies and damosells were in her company whilst thus shee lamented her knights absence; who hearing of her desperate intended death, made exceeding sorrow. Some there were that so mightily grieved that they could not speake one word; other some there were that sought to persuade her from that desperate intent; but all in vaine: for shee presently went from them, and with her owne blood writ a letter and wrapped it in a sear-cloth, and then sewed it to the vestures, wherein shee was clothed: then taking her crowne, shee bound it from her head with a golden chaine, which the Red Rose Knight before time had given her. Then when shee had done all this, shee came to her little sonne and many times kissed him, and so delivered him to the ladies and damselles to be nourished: and so after taking leave of them all she departed toward the sea, whither being come, she went to the top of the high rocke, where shee began to looke downe upon the sea, and after casting herselfe upon the earth, looking up towards heaven shee sayd:

Thou God of my fortunes, Lord of the windes and seas, thou that broughtest into this countrey the right

perfect knight, in beauty, manhood, and all vertues, grant that when my soule hath made passage out of this world, my body may be intombed in his bosom ; which words being sayd, shee turned her eyes towards her pallace, and spake with a high voyce : Adieu my dear babe, adieu you glistning towers, my royall pallace ; adieu ladies and damsels, and lastly adieu to all the world. And in saying so, shee cast herselfe into the sea, and there desperately drowned herselfe.

But yet such was her fortune, that the waves of the sea, bore her dead body, the same day to the English knights ship, which as then lay in a road, where they had cast anchor, for to rest that night, and to be short, it so hapned at the same houre when her dead body was cast against the ship, the Red Rose Knight went up the hatches to take the fresh ayre ; where looking about he espied the dead lady richly attyred in cloth of gold, that gorgeously shone in the water, the which he presently caused to be taken up and brought into the ship ; where looking wishly upon her hee knew her perfectly well ; and after stooping to kisse her pale lips, hee found a bloody letter, which shee had compiled, wrapt in seare-cloth : so taking it and reading the contents thereof, his blood began to change, and to waxe red like the rose, and presently againe as pale as ashes. Whereat Sir Lancelot and the other knights were greatly abashed ; but especially Anglitora, who demanded the cause of his grieve. Whereunto the Red Rose Knight was not able to answer a word, the sorrow of his heart so exceeded ;

yet notwithstanding he delivered the bloody letter to Anglitora, the contents whereof are these that follow :

The Bloody Letter of Queen Cælia.

Thou bright star of Europe, thou chosen of England, for prowess and beauty, when wilt thou returne to fullfill thy promise made unto her, that many a day hath had her eyes planted upon the seas after thee, shedding more teares in thy absence, than the Heavens containe starres ? Ah, my deare love, makest thou no reckoning, nor account of thy promise that thou madest to mee at thy departure ? Knowest thou not that every noble mind is bound to keepe his word, upon paine of reproach and shame ? but thou hast infringed it, and hast broken thy oath of knighthood, which no excuse can recover. For since I last saw thy ship floting on the seas, I never came within my pallace, till the writing hereof, nor never lay me in my bed to take my rest, nor never sate in judgement on my countreys causes ; but for the space of forty dayes I stood upon a rocke expecting thy returne, till famine constrained me to depart. There have I stood day and night, in raine and in snow, in the cold of the morning, and in the heat of the sunne; in fasting, in prayers, in desires, in hopes ; and finally, languishing in despaire and death : where, when I could heare no newes of thy returne, I desperately cast myselfe into the sea, desiring the gods that they would bring mee either alive or dead to thy presence, to expresse the true affection that I have ever borne thy noble persone : thus

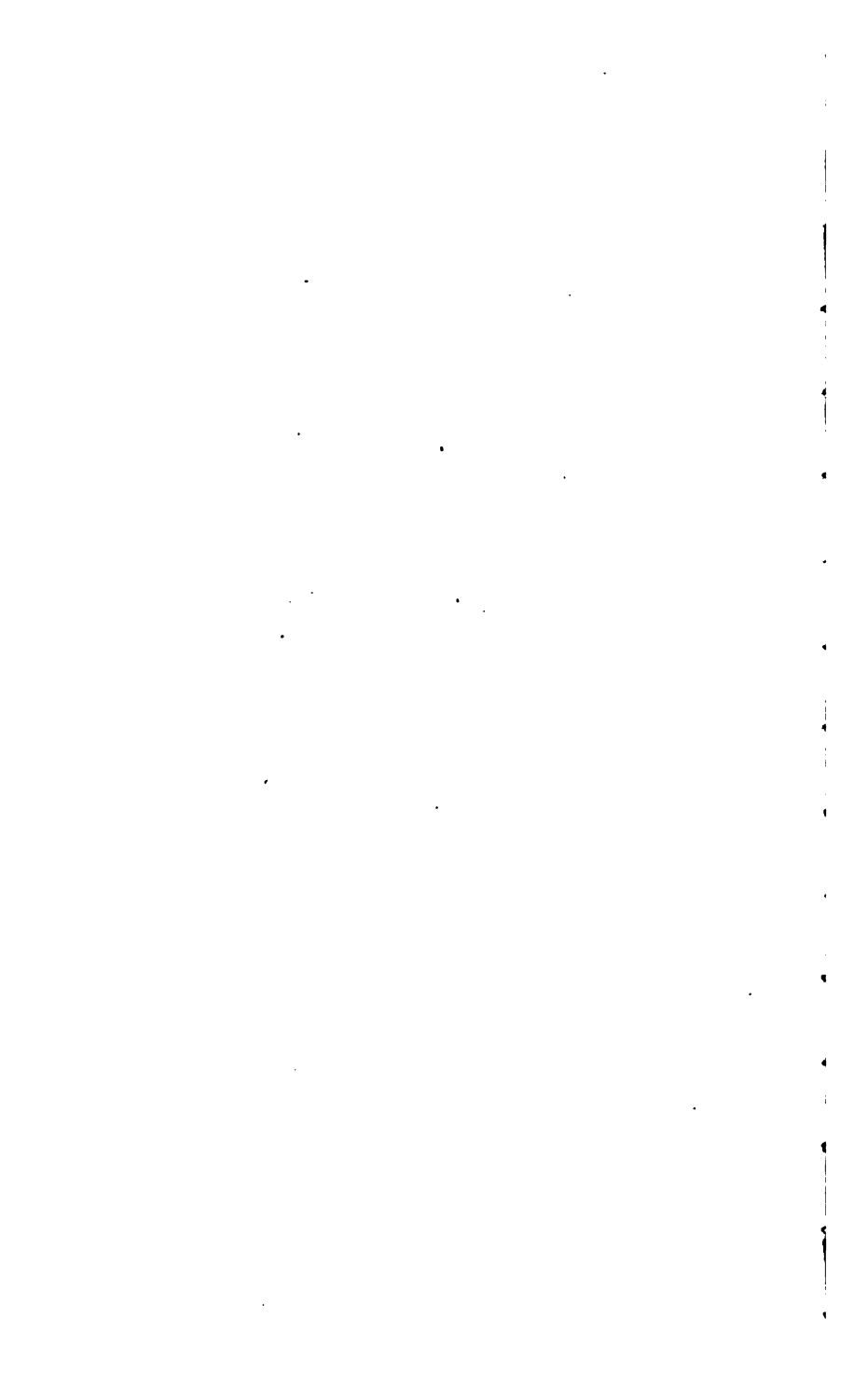
fare thou well. From her that lived and dyed with an
unspotted minde

Thine owne true lover, till we meet
in the Elyzian Fields; thy unhappy Cælia,
Queene of the Fayrie Land.

Thus when faire Anglitora had read those bloody
lines, she greatly lamented her unhappy death: and
withall, requested the Red Rose Knight, in that she
dyed for his sake, to beare her body into England, and
there most honourably intombe it: to which he most
willingly consented. So causing her body to be imbalm-
ed, they hoysted sayle, and departed towards England;
unto which country, they within foure months safely
arrived. At whose comming the inhabitants and dwellers
greatly rejoyced, but chiefly the Red Rose Knight and
his company, who at their first arrivall, kneeled downe
upon the earth, and gave God thanks for preserving them
from so many dangers and perils, to their high re-
nowne; and triumphant victories.

After this, they intombed the body of Cælia most
honourably as befitted a princesse of her calling. This
being done, they departed toward Pendragon Castle,
standing in Wales, where as then King Arthur kept his
royall court: where being arived, they found the king,
and many other nobles in a readines to give them a
princely welcome: amongst whom was fayre Angellica
the nun of Lincolne, mother to the Red Rose Knight;
yet kept in so secret a manner, that neither he, nor she,

had any suspition thereof, but spake one to another as meere strangers : The discovery of whom is discussed at large in the second part of this historie : as likewise the strange fortune of Cælias little sonne, which the ladies in the Fayrie Land called by the name of the Fayrie Knight; and by what meanes he came to be called the Worlds Triumph: with many other strange accidents, &c. But now (to conclude this first part) the Red Rose Knight and the faire Anglitora were solemnely married together, and lived long time in King Arthurs court, in great joy, tranquillitie, and peace.



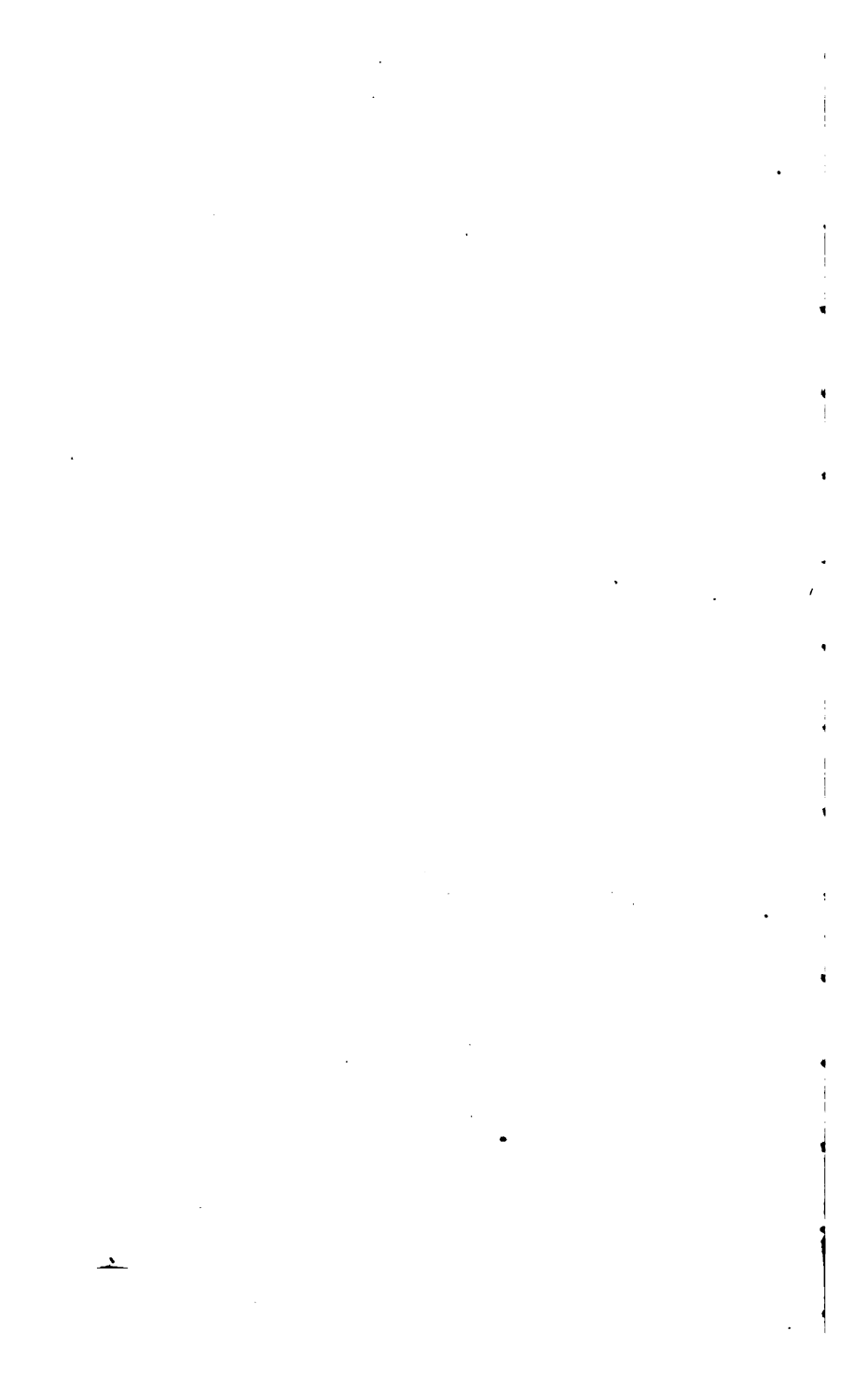
THE SECOND PART
OF THE
FAMOUS HISTORIE
OF
TOM A LINCOLNE,
The Red Rose Knight ;

Wherein is declared his unfortunate Death, his Ladies Dis-
loyaltie, his Childrens Honours, and lastly his Death
most strangely revenged.

Written by the first Author.

LONDON :
PRINTED BY A. M.

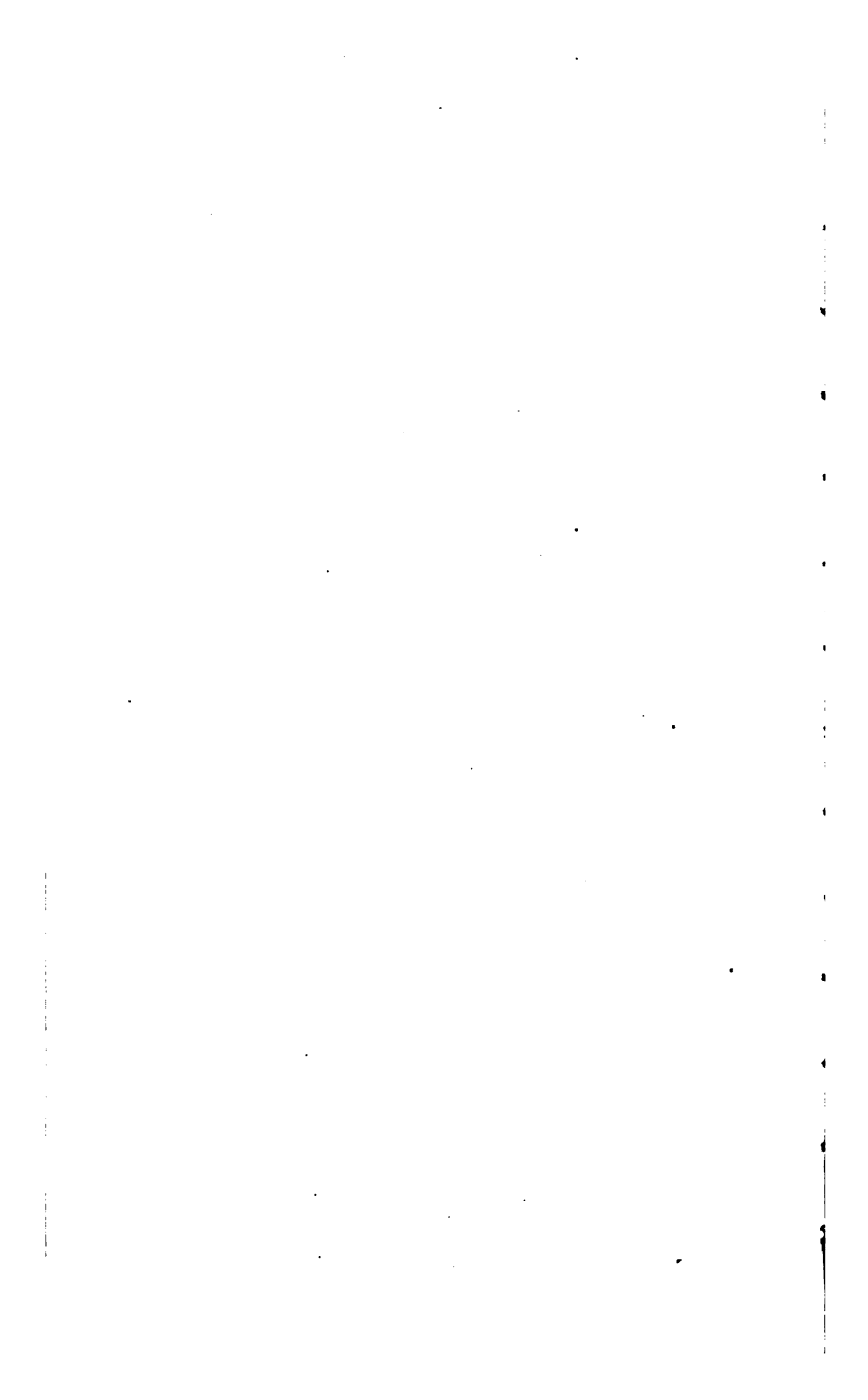
1685.



TO THE READER.

Promise is debt (gentle Reader) I have therefore performed what in my first part I promised ; which was to shew thee the unfortunate death of the Red Rose Knight, his beloved Lady Anglitora's disloyall affection towards him, his Childrens Honours, Renownes, and Dignities ; and in the period of this Historie his death both justly, truly and strangely revenged. The Reading of which (if with good consideration) I doubt not but shall bring unto thee much pleasure and delight, being (for the quantity thereof) nothing inferiour to the best that hath been written of the like subject, (I mean) of Knights adventures and Ladies beloved. I therefore dedicate this to thy reason, knowing that this old Proverbe may confirme my expectation, which is, That good Wine needs no Bush ; nor a pleasing History craues no shelter. Farewell.

R. J.



THE SECOND PART OF THE FAMOUS HISTORY
OF TOM A LINCOLNE, THE RED
ROSE KNIGHT, &c.

CHAP. I.

How Tom a Lincolne knew not his mother till forty yeares of his age nor whose son he was : Of King Arthur's death, and his dying speeches, and what hapned thereupon.

WHEN Arthur, that renowned King of England, (being one of the Nine Worthies of the World,) had by twelve severall set battailys, conquered the third part of the earth, and being wearyed with the exploytes of martiall adventures, in his old dayes betooke himselfe to a quiet course of life, turning his warlike habiliaments to divine bookes of celestiall meditations ; that as the one had made him famous in this world, so might the other make him blessed in the world to come. Seven yeares continued quiet thoughts in his brest ; seven yeares never heard hee the sound of delightfull drummes ; nor in seven yeares beheld he his thrice worthy Knights of the Round Table, flourishing in his Court ; by which

meanes his pallace grew disfurnished of those martiall troopes that drew commendations from all forraigne kingdomes. In this time most of those renowned champions had yielded their lives to the conquering tyranny of pale Death, and in the bowells of the earth lay sleeping their eternall sleepes ; the royall king himselfe laden with the honour of many yeares, and having now (according to nature) the burthen of death lying heavie upon his shoulders, and the stroke lifted up to divide his body from his soule, hee called before him all the chiefest of his Court, but especially his owne Queene, the Red Rose Knight, and his Lady Anglitora, with the faire Angelica, the Nunne of Lincolne, whom hee had so many yeares secretly loved ; and being at the point to bid a woful farewell to the world, with countenance as majesticall as King Priam of Troy, he spake as followeth :

First, to thee my loved Queene, must I utter the secrets of my very soule, and what wanton escapes I have made from my nuptiall bed, otherwise cannot this my labouring life depart from my fading body in quiet ; long have I lived in the delightful sin of adultery, and polluted our marriage bed with that vile pleasure, pardon, I beseech thee, and with that forgivenessse (which I hope will proceed from thy gentle heart,) wash away this long bred evil, the celestiall powers have granted me remission. Then turning to Angelica, the Nunne of Lincolne, he said,

Oh, thou my youth's delight, thou whose love hath

bereaved my queene of such marriage pleasure, thou, and but only thou, have I offended withall ; therefore, divine Angelica, forgive me : I, like a ravisher, spotted thy virginity, I cropt thy sweet body of chastity, I with flattery won thy heart, and led thee from thy father's house, (the great Earl of London) to feede my wanton desires ; by thee had I a sonne, of whom both thou and I take glory of, for in his worthiness remains the true image of a martialist, and this renowned Knight of the Red Rose is he : hee lives : the fruit of our wanton pleasures born at Lincoln, and there by a shepherd brought up, few knowing (till now) his true parents. Marvaile not, dear sonne, thinke not amisse sweet Queen, nor thou my lovely Angelica : Be not dismayed you honorable states here attending my dying hour, for as I hope presently to enter Elysium Paradise, and weare the crowne of desertful glory, I have revealed the long secrets of my heart, and truely brought to light those things that the darkness of oblivion hath covered. Now the mother knows her son, the son the mother. Now may this valiant knight boast of his pedigree, and a quiet content satisfie all your doubts. Thus have I spoke my mind, and thus quieted, my soul bids the world farewell. Adue, faire queene, adue deare son, farewell lovely Angelica ; Lords and Ladies adue unto you all, you have seene my life, so now behold my death ; as kings doe live, so kings must die. These were the last of King Arthur's words ; and being dead, his death not half so amazed the standers by, as the strange speeches at his life's farewell.

The Queene in a raging jealousie fretted at her marriage wrongs, protested in her heart to be revenged upon the Nun of Lincolne.

The Nun of Lincolne seeing her wantonnesse discovered, tooke more grieve thereat than joy in the finding of her long lost son ; supposing now that (the king being gone) she should be made a scandall to the world.

The Red Rose Knight knowing himself to be begot in wantonnesse, and borne a bastard, tooke small joy in the knowledge of his mother.

Anglitora (Tom a Lincoln's wife,) exceeded all the rest in sorrow, bitterly sobbing to her selfe, and in heart making great lamentation, in that she had forsaken father, mother, friends, acquaintance, and country, all for the love of a bastard, bred in the womb of a shamelesse strumpet, therefore she purposed to give him the slip, and with her owne sonne (a young gallant knight, named the Black Knight, in courage like his father,) to travell towards the kingdom of Prester John, where she first breathed life, and her father reigned.

In this melancholy humour spent they many dayes troubling their braines with divers imaginations. The Court which before rung with delights, and flourished in gallant sort, now thundred with complaints ; every one dialiking his owne estate. Discontent, as a proud commander, governed over them, and their attendants were idle fancies and disquiet thoughts ; and to speak truth, such a confused court was seldome seene in the land, for no sooner was King Arthur's funerall solemnized,

but the whole troopes of Lords, Knights, and Gentlemen, Ladies and others, were (like to a splitted ship torne by the tempest of the sea) severed, every one departed whither his fancie best pleased.

The Red Rose Knight conducted his mother Angelica to a cloyster in Lincolne, which place she had so often polluted with her shame, there to spend the remnant of her life in repentance and with her true lamentations, to wash away her black spots of sinne that so grievously staineth her soule, who from a pure virgin made herself a desolute strumpet.

Likewise King Arthurs widdowed queene, like to ireful Hecuba or the jealous Juno, kept her chamber for many dayes, pondering in her minde what revenge she might take upon Angelica her husbands late favorite.

On the other side Anglitora, lady and wife to the Red Rose Knight with her son the Black Knight, made provision for their departure towards the land of Prester John, where she was born; so upon a night when neither moone nor starlight appeared they secretly departed the court only attended on by a negar or black-more: a slave fitting to provide them necessaries and to carry their apparel and jewels after them, whereof they had abundant store. The Blacke Knight her son (so called rather by fierce courage than his blacke complexion) was all fired with the desire that he had to see his grandsire Prester John, therefore without taking leave of his father (being then absent in the company of his lewd grandmother) with noble spirit conductd his mother to the

sea side, where a ship was ready then to hoist sayle, where of the pilots they were most willingly received for passengers. And in this manner departed they the land, the Black Knight wore on his helmet for a scutcheon a black raven feeding on dead men's flesh, his caparisons were all of velvet embroidered which most lively figured forth the blacke furie lodged in his princely bosome. Anglitora his mother had the attyre of an amazon, made all of the best Arabian silke, coloured like the changeable hue of the raine-bow : about her neck hung a jewell of a wonderful value, which was a diamond cut in the fashion of a heart split asunder with a Turkish semitar, betokening a doubt that she had of her knights loyalty. The slavish Moore that attended them, went all naked, except a shadow of greene taffeta which covered his privy parts, upon his foot a Morischo shoe, which is nothing but a soale made of an asses hide, buckled with small leathers to his insteps, upon his head he wore a wreath of cypress gilded with pure gold, and a plate of brass about his neck close locked, with the word 'Bond-slave' engraven about it. In this manner passed they the seas, and was by these strange habits wondered at in all countries where they came. In which travels we will leave them for a time and speak of other things pertinent to our story.

CHAP. II.

Of Tom a Lincolne's strange manner of travelling, his wofull departure from England, and of his sorrowfull lamentations for the unkindnesse of his Lady.

WHEN Tom a Lincolne the Red Rose Knight had spent some two months in the company of his mother at Lincolne, giving her as much comfort as a sonne might, hee left her very penitent for her lives amisse, and returned to the court where he left both his wife and her sonne, the Blacke Knight, thinking at his arrivall to find so joyfull a welcome, and so courtious an entertainment, that all the blacke clouds of discontent might be blowne over by their happy meeting : but as ill chance had allotted, all things fell out contrary to all expectation, for hee neither found wife, child, servant, nor any one to make him answer : his plate and treasure was diminished, his household furniture imbesselled and by thieves violently carried away, he had not so much as one steed left in his stable, for them the queene had seized on for her use : and furthermore (by her commandment) a decree was made that whomsoever in all the land shewed him any or gave him but homely reverence should lose their heads, for shee had entitled him, "The base borne seed of lust, a strumpets brat, and the common shame of the dead king." This was the malice of King Arthurs widow : and surely Queene Juno never thirsted more for the confusion of Hercules, then shee

did for Tom a Lincolnes overthrow : but yet this grieve (being cast from a princesse favour to a vulgar disgrace) was but a pleasure to the sorrow hee tooke for the misse of his lady and sonne : no newes could hee heare from them, but that they were fled from the fury of the angry queene, which was but a vaine imagination layd upon the time ; but farre otherwise did mischief set in her foot, the doting minde of his lady Anglitora intended to a further reach, which was to abandon his presence for ever, and to thinke him as ominous to her sight as the killing cockatrice.

The effect of this his wifes suddain dislike shee had caused (before her departure) to be carved in stone over the chimney of his lodging, how that shee deserved damnation to leave father, friends, and country, for the disloyall love of a bastard. Of all grieve to him this was the very spring, the roote, the depth, the height ; which when hee had read, hee fell into a sound, and had it not been for two pages that accompanied him he had never recovered : in this agony the vaines of his breast sprang out into blood, and all the parts of his body swate with grieve : downe fell he then upon his knees, and immediately pulled the ring from his finger, which shee had given him when they were first betrothed, and wash't it with his tears, kissing it a hundred times ; all that ever hee had from her did hee wash with the blood that trickled from his bosome, and after bound them in a cypresse to his left side, directly where his heart lay, protesting by that God that created him, and was the

guide of all his past fortunes, never to take them thence till either hee found his lady or ended his life. He likewise made a solemn vow to heaven never to cut his hair, never to come in bed, never to weare sho, never to taste food, but onely bread and water, nor never to take pleasure in humanitie, till hee had eased his grieve in the presence of his dearest Anglitora, and that her love were reconciled to him. .

Being thus strangely resolved hee discharged his servants and pages, giving them all the wealth that hee had, and clad himselfe in tann'd sheep skins made close unto his body, whereby he seemed rather a naked wilde man bred in the wilderness than a sensible creature brought up by civill conversation. Thus bare footed and bare legged with an ivory staff in his hand, he set forward to seeke his unkind wife and unnaturall sonne giving this wofull farewell to his native country.

Oh you celestial powers (quoth hee) wherefore am I punished for my parents offences? Why is their secret sinnes made my publie misery? What have I misdome that my wife resisteth me, and like a discourteous lady forsakes me, making her absence my present calamity?

Oh thou gracious Queene of Love, I have beene as loyall a servant in thy pleasures as ever was Hero to his Leander, or Pyramus to his Thisbe: then what madding fury like a cruell commander, hath taken possession of my Anglitora's heart, and placed infernal conditions, whereas the pure virtues of modest behaviour had wont to be harboured: it cannot be otherwise, but the enraged

queene, with her unquenchable envie hath driven her hence, and not only of one heart made two, but of two seekes to make none; which is by untimely death, to worke both our confusions; therefore proud queene, farewell: let all the furies haunt thee, and may the court seeme as hatefull to thy sight, as the torments of hell fire to a guilty conscience. Ungratefull England likewise adieu to thee, for all the honours I have brought into thy bounds, and with the spoyles of foraigne countreys made thee theonely prince of kingdomes. Yet thou repaist me with disgrace; and load'st me with more contempt, then my never conquered heart can endure. So kissing the ground with his warme lips that had so long fostered him, and with many a bitter teare and deepe sob, like a pilgrim (as I sayd before) hee tooke leave of his native countrey, and so went to the sea side: where hee heard of his wife and sonnes departure, after whom (as soone as the wind conveniently served) he tooke shipboard: where wee will now likewise leave him to his fortune upon the sea, and speake of the professed malice the queene prosecuted against Angelica the mother of the Red Rose Knight.

CHAP. III.

Of the Wofull death of Angellica, mother to the Red Rose Knight, and of the death of the jealous Queene and others.

THE beauttious Angelica being left by hersonne the Red Rose Knight (at his departure) in a monastery at Lin-

colne, there to bewaile her former offences ; and for her youths pleasure in age to taste the bitter food of sorrow : the day time shee spent in grieved passions, the night shee wasted with heart breaking sobs ; she fed on carefull thoughts, her drinke was streames of salt tears ; her companions thoughts of her passed wanton pleasures ; her bed no better than the cold earth : her sleeps were few, but her comforts lesse ; her continuall exercise was with a needle to worke in silke, upon the hangings of her chamber, how shee was first wooed then wonne to King Arthurs pleasures, in what manner their meetings were, their wanton dalliances, his embraces, her smiles ; his princely gifts, her courteous acceptance ; and lastly the birth of her thrice worthy sonne, his bringing up, his honours in the court, and his strange discovery ; all which shee had wrought as an arras worke, with silke of diverse colours, in a piece of the purest Hollande cloth. In doing this twice had the golden sunne runne his circumference round the worlde, twice had the pleasant spring beautified the earth with her changeable mantles, twice had nipping winter made the fields barren, and the woods leaflesse, and twice had the yeare shewn himselfe to all mankinde ; in which time of twice twelve months, every day made shee a sorrowfull complaint for the wrack of honour, and her virginities losse which shee so willingly surrendered ; and in this so greatly had sorrow and grieve changed her, that her eyes (which had wont like twinckling diamonds to give light to all affections) were now sunke into their cells, and seemed

like a hollow sepulchre new opened ; her face wherein beautie herselfe dwelt, and her cheeks the true die of the lillie and the rose intermixt, now appeared old and writhen, like to the countenance of Hecuba when her husband King Priamus and his princely children were slaine at Troys destruction : and her tresses of gold like hayre, which like to Indian wyers hung over her shoulders, were now growne more white then thistle downe, the isickles of frozen ice, or the white mountains snow ; all these griefes of nature had not age changed, but the inward grieve of her carefull heart.

But now marke the wofull change that hapned, even upon the day, which by computation shee had in former times yielded up her maydens pride, and lost that jewell that kingdomes cannot recover ; upon that haplesse day came there a messenger from the queene to bid her make preparation for death, for on that day should be her lives end, and her fortunes period, which shee most willingly accepted of, and tooke more joy thereat than to be invited to a princely banquet.

Be not dismayed (said the messenger) for you shall have as honourable a death as ever had lady : seven severall instruments of death shall be presented to you for a choise, and your owne tongue shall give sentence which of them you will die by ; whereupon this messenger set this sorrowfull lady at a round table, directly in the middle of a very large room whereinto hee had led her, hung all about with blacke ; where being placed as to a banquet, or some solemne dinner of state, there

entred seven Servitours in disguised shapes like unto murderers, with seven severall deadly services in dishes of silver plate. The first brought in fire burning in a dish if she would, to consume her body to ashes; the second brought in a dish a twisted coard, to strangle her to death; the third a dish full of deadly poyson, to burst her body withall; the fourth a sharpe edg'd rayzor or knife, to cut her throat; the fifth an iron wracke to teare her body into small pieces; the sixth a dishfull of live snakes to sting her to death: and the seventh an impoysoned garment, being worne, that will consume both flesh and blood. These seven deathfull serviteurs, having set downe their dishes (the least whereof brings present death) shee was commanded by the messenger which of them shee should chose to die withall, and to make speedy choice; for hee was sworne to the queene (on whom hee attended) to see it that day accomplished. At these his words shee fell presently upon her knees, and with a courage readier to yield to deaths furie then to the mercie of the living queene, sayd as followeth.

Oh thou guider of this earthly globe, thou that gavest my weak nature over unto a wanton life, and from a virgin chaste, hast made me an infamous strumpet, thou that sufficedst onely a king in majestie to prevail against me, and with the power of greatnesse won me to lewdnesse; for which I am now doomed to a present death, and forced by violence to bid this tempted world adieu, inspire me with that happy choice of death, as my soule may have an easy passage from my body. First to die

by fire, to an earthly imagination seems terrible, and far different from nature. Secondly, to die with strangling coard, were base, and more fitting for robbers, theeves, and malefactors. Thirdly, to die by deadly poyson were a death for beasts and wormes, that feed upon the bosome of the earth. Fourthly to die by cutting knives and slicing rayzors, were a death for cattle, fowls, and fishes, that die for the use of man. Sixtly, by a iron wracke to end my life, were a barbarous death, and against man's nature. But seventhly, to die a lingring death, which is a life consuming by wearing of impoysoned garments, (where repentance may still be in company) will I chuse; therefore sweet messenger of my death, doe thy office, attyre me in these robes: and the manner of my death I beseech thee make knowne unto the queene: tell her (I pray thee) I forgive her: and may my death be a quit unto her soule, for my life is to her eares as the fatal sound of night ravens on the mermaid's tunes.

Vaine world now must I leave thy flattering inticements, and instead of thy pomp and glory, must shortly tread the doleful march of pale death; and this body that hath been so pleasing to a prince's eye, must be surrendered up for wormes to feed upon. Many other words would shee have spoken, but that the commanding messenger (being tyed to an houre) caused her to put on the empoysoned robes, which no sooner came to the warmth of her body, but the good lady after a few bitter sighes and dreadful gaspes, yielded up the ghost: being (through the

extremities of the infectious garment) made like to an anatomie, which they wrapped in seare cloth, and the next day gave her buriall according to her estate, and so returned to the enraged queene, keeping then her court at Pendragon Castle, in Wales, into whose presence, the messenger was no sooner come, but the angry queene, beyond all measure being desirous to heare of Lady Angelica's death, in a rage ran and clasped him about the middle, saying, Speake Messenger speake, is the vile strumpet dead? is the shame of womankind tortured? is my hearts grieve by her death banished my bosome? speake, for I am overmastered with doubts.

Most gracious queen (quoth the Messenger) resolve yourself of her death; for the cold earth hath enclosed up her body; but so patiently took shee her death, that well might it have moved a tiger's heart to remorse, for in truth my heart relented at the manner of her death: never went lambe more gently to the slaughter, nor never turtle dove was more meeke, than this wofull lady at the message of her death; for the elements did seeme to mourne, closing their bright beauties up in black and sable curtaines: and the very flintie walls (as it were) sweate at the agonie of her death, so gentle, meeke, and humble tooke shee her death, commending herselfe unto your majestie, wishing that her death might be your soules contentment. And could she be so patient (quoth the queene) that even in death would wish happinesse to the causers thereof? farewell thou miracle of womankind. I have been to thee a savage

lionesse ; I was blinded at thereport of thy wantonnesse, else hadst thou been now alive : all my cruelties against thee I now deeply repent, and for thy deare hearts blood, by me so rashly spilt, shall bee satisfied with the lives of many soules. Hereupon shee in a furie commanded the messengers head to be stricken off, and the seven servitours to be hanged all at the Court Gate, and afterwards caused their limbs to be set upon high pooles, by the common high wayes side, as an example of her indignation. Never after this houre (such is the remorse of guiltie conscience) could shee sleepe in quiet, but strange visions of this lady (as shee thought) seemed to appeare to her : the least noise that shee heard whispering in the silence of the night, did shee imagine to be some furie to dragge her to Hell, for the death of this good lady. The windes (as shee imagined) murmured forth revenge, the running rivers hummed forth revenge, the flying Fowles of the Ayre whistled out Revenge ; yea every thing that made noyse (in her conceit) gave remorse for Revenge : and till that her owne life had given satisfaction by death, for the ruine of so sweet a ladies life, no food could do her good, no sleep quiet her braine, no pleasure content her minde, but despaire with a terrible countenance, did evermore attend her, willing her sometime to throw herselfe headlong from the top of a tower, sometime by poyson to end her dayes, sometime by drowning, sometime by hanging, sometime by one thing, sometime by another : but at last in the middle of the night, having her heart deeply overmas-

tered by despaire, she tooke a girdle of pure Arabian silke, which girdle shee first wore on her princely nuptiall day when King Arthur married her ; this fatall girdle shee made a sliding knot of, and therewithall upon her bed post shee hanged herselfe. Thus blood (you see) being guiltlesse shed, is quitted againe with blood.

The queene being dead, was not so much pitied of the people, as the good Lady Angellica, little lamentation was made for her death ; for every one expected the like untimely ende : but according to the allegiance of subjects, her noblemen gave her a princely funerall, and set over her an Iron Tombe, in signification that she had an iron heart, and flinty conditions.

Here will we leave the dead to their quiet rests, and returne to the Blacke Knight and his Mother Anglitora, with the Indian slave that attends them ; for strange bee the accidents that happen to them in forraigne countreyes ; and after we will speak what happened to the Red Rose Knight upon the sea.

CHAP. IV.

By what meanes Anglitora became a Curtizan, and how her Sonne, the Black Knight lost himselfe in a Wildernesse.

THE Black Knight his Mother Anglitora and the Blackamore Slave having happily crossed the seas, and arrived in a countrey very fertill to see to, replenished with all kinds of trees and fruit, yet were there no inhabitants to

find, but onely an Old Castle, built of flint stones, the turrets whereof were made like the Grecian Pyramides, square and very high. At this castle gate they knocked so boldly, (each one careless of all accidents that might happen) as it ran into the chamber where the knight of the castle lay; who immediately sent a very low statured dwarfe to see who knocked, and if they were strangers, to direct them up into his chamber, to take such kind curtesies as the castle afforded: for indeed hee was a knight of a bountiful condition, and full of liberality. The Dwarfe no sooner comming to the gate, and espying people in such strange disquieted attires, never having seene the like before, without speaking one word, ranne amazedly up to his master, certifying him that a kinde of people of an unknowne nation was arrived, and that they seemed rather Angells (in shape) then any earthly creatures.

The Knight of the Castle hearing this, came down and met them in a large square court paved with marble stone where hee kindly gave them entertainment, promising them both lodging and other needfull things they were destitute of. The three travellers accepted of his courtesies, and being long before weather-beaten on the seas, thought themselves from a deep dungeon of calamities, lifted to the top of all pleasures and prosperitie; thus from this paved court, the Knight led them up to his owne chamber wherein there was a fire made of Juniper wood and frankincense, which smelled very sweet; the walls were hung about with rich tapestrie, whereon

was writ the story of Troys destruction, the Creation of Mankind, and the fearful description of the latter day of Doome; likewise hung upon the same walls Instruments of all sorts of musicke, with such varietie of other pleasures, as they had never seene the like.

Now while these weary travellers tooke pleasure in beholding these things, the good knight caused his dwarfe, (which was all the servants that hee kept) to cover the table made of cypress wood, with a fine damaske table cloth, and thereon set such delicates as his castle afforded, which was a piece of a wild boar, roasted the same morning, with divers other services of fowles, whereof the countrie had plentie; their bread was made of the almonds mixed with goats milke, (for no corn grew in that soyle) their drinke of the wild grape likewise mingled with goats milke, which is in my mind accounted restorative: to this banquet were the travellers placed, where having good stomachs, they quickly satisfied hunger, and after began to chat of their adventures, what dangers they endured by sea, and how luckily they arrived in that country, giving the courteous Knight great thanks for his kindnesse.

On the other side, when the banquet was ended, every one rising from the table, he took an Orphirian that hung by, and caused his dwarfe to dance after the sound thereof; the strings whereof he himself strained with such curiositie, that it moved much delight, especially the Lady Anglitora, whose eyes and ears were as attentive to the melodie, as Helens were to the enchanting

musicke of the Grecian Paris. In this kind of pleasure consumed they most part of the day, till the bright sun began greatly to decline, then the Black Knight in a courageous spirit, said, Sir Knight (for so you seeme to bee, by your entertainment of strangers) this carpet kind of pleasure I like not, it disagrees with my young desires: the hunting of untamed tygers, the tilts and tournaments of knights, and the battles of renowned warriours, is the glory I delight in; and now, considering no other adventrous exercise may be found in this countrey, but only the hunting of wild beasts, I will into the forests, and by manhood fetch some wild venison for my mother's supper.

The Knight of the Castle (seeing his resolution) furnished him with a hunting javelin, and so directed him to the forest, where most plentie of such pleasures were: God bee his good speed, for we will leave the Black Knight in his exercise, and speake of the wanton affections of Anglitora, and the Knight of the Castle, that they cast upon each other: a short tale to make, whereas two hearts make one thought, the bargaine is soon made. The Knight of the Castle having not had the presence nor societie of a woman in seven yeares before, grew as wantonly minded as the Roman Tarquinius, when he ravished the chaste Lady Lucretia. On the other side Anglitora having the renowne of disloyaltie, grew so pliable to his desires, that at his pleasure he obtained that love, which in former times the Red Rose Knight adventured his life for: she that in former times was accounted the worlds admiration for constancie, was now the very wonder of

shame, and the byword of modest matrons ; this was the first daies entrance into these wanton pleasures, which in all daliance they spent till the sun had lost the sight of the earth : then expecting the return of the Blacke Knight from hunting, they sat as demurely as they had beene the chastest hours in the world ; not a glance of wantonnesse passed betwixt them, but all modest and civill behaviours ; in this sort stayed they, attending for the return of the Blacke Knight, but all in vaine : for hunting a wild panther in chase, he followed so far in the unknowne forest that he lost himselfe all that night travelling to find the way forth, but could not ; sleepe was to him as meate to a sicke man ; his steps were nnmberlesse, like the starres of heaven, or the sands of the sea ; his devises for recoverie little prevailed, the further he went, the further hee was from returning. Thus day and night (for many days and nights) spent hee in these comfortlesse travailes ; no hope cheered his heart, no comfort bore him company, but his patient mind : and now at last, when he saw all meanes frustrate he resolved to live and die in that solitary forrest : his food he made of the fruits of trees, his drinke of the cleare running water ; his bed was no better than a heap of sun burnd mosse ; his canopies the azure elements full of twinkling lights, his curtains a row of thick branched trees ; the torches to light him to his bed, the starres of Heaven ; the melodie of musicke to bring him asleepe, the croakes of ravens or the fearful cries of night owles ; the clocke to tell the houres of the night, were hissing

snakes, and toads croaking in foggy grasse : his morning cocke the cheerefull nightingale, or the creeping larke ; his companions on the day, were howling wolves, ravening lions, and the wrathfull boars ; all (as the fates had decreed) as gentle to him in fellowship, as people of a civill government ; for to say truth, time and, necessity had converted him, to a man of wild conditions ; for his haire was growne long and shaggy, like unto a satyre : his flesh tanned in the sun as an Indian : the nailes of his fingers were as the tallents of eagles, wherewith he could easily climbe the highest trees ; garments hee had not any, for they were worne out, and as willingly was he content with nakednesse, as in former times he was with rich habiliments. Thus lived hee for seven long yeares in this desolate forest, by which time he was almost grown out of the favour of a man ; where for a short time we will leave him, and proceed to other accidents ; also we will overpasse the lewd lives of Anglitora and the Knight of the Castle, nor speak as yet any more of their seven years adultery ; for numberlesse were the sinnes committed by them in those seven yeares, in that accursed castle.

CHAP. V.

How the Red Rose Knight found his Lady, and how he was most strangely murdered, and buried in a dung-hill.

THE Blackamore Slave (as you have heard) attended upon them like an obedient servant, and shewed all duty and

love, till Anglitora gave her body to the spoile of lust, and from a vertuous lady, converted herself to a hated strumpet ; which vile course of life, when the Indian perceived, hee secretly departed the castle, greatly lamenting the wrongs of his master, the Red Rose Knight, whose noble minde deserved better at her hands. Day and night travelled the poor slave towards England, thinking to find his master there, and to reveal that which he thought hardly would be believed by him ; weary and opprest with hunger, went he this long journey ; many provinces he passed thorow, before hee could learne the way towards England ; and then was hee so farre from it as at the first, when hee departed from the castle.

The labouring husbandman grieved not more to see his corne and cattell taken by theeves, nor the merchant to heare of his shippes sunke at sea, then did this Indian at his vaine travailes and wearisome journeyes to small purpose, so at last setting forward againe, he came to the sea side, thinking to heare of some ship to give him passage over : but alas one crosse falls after another, one mischiefe comes upon the necke of another : and one mischance seldome happens alone ; so as this true-hearted negar stood beholding how the billowes of the sea beat against her bankes, and the whale fishes lay wallowing in the waves, behold such a tempest suddenly arose, that by the force thereof the poore slave was cast into the sea, but by reason of his silken vaile tyed about his middle, and his great skill in swimming (as most

negars be perfect therein) kept himself from drowning : and as good fortune would the same tempest drove the weather beaten ship to the same shore, wherein the Red Rose Knight (his master) was, which ship had beene seven yeares upon the sea in great extremitie, and before this tyde could never see land. By that time the tempest ended, the ship floated to land, wherein was left but onely the Red Rose Knight, in his Palmer's weed (for all the rest were starved up for want of food) who being weake and feeble, climbed up to the top of the hatches, where, when he had perceived the negar labouring for life upon the waters, cast out a long coard, and so saved him : whom when the Red Rose Knight saw and perfectly knew, he fell almost into a trance for joy, supposing his lady and sonne not to be far distant ; but recovering his former senses he spake as followeth.

Oh blessed Neptune, hast thou vouchsafed to deliver me from the depth of thy bowels and cast me on land, where once againe I may behold my faire Anglitora, and my deare sonne the Black Knight. These seven yeares famine endured on the sea, hath beene sweete pleasure to me, in that the end brings me to my desires. Full three score of my miserable companions in this ship, hath death seased upon, and through famine have eaten one another, making their hungry bowels graves for the other carcasses ; and though now this belly of mine (like the canibals) have been glutted with humane flesh, and this mouth of mine tasted the blood of man : yet am I as pittifull as the tender hearted mother for-

getting her sons offences ; and to my Anglitora will be as kind, as if never she had trespassed ; nor like the Grecian Helena, left her married lord : so taking the blackamore by the hand, he demanded of her welfare, and in what estate his son remained. The true-hearted negar could hardly speake for grieve, or utter one word for teares : yet at the last with a wofull sigh hee uttered forth these heart killing speeches.

Oh my noble master (quoth he) by you from a Pagan I was made a Christian ; by you from a Heathen nation without civilitie, I was brought to a land of princely government, and by you till my departure, was I maintained in good manner ; therefore if I should prove a perjured slave, and a false varlet towards you, my body were worthy to bee made foode for hungry fowles of the ayre, and for the ravening beasts of the fields : therefore considering now that dutie binds me to it, I will reveal such wofull chaunces, and such disloyall trickes shewed by your lady, as will make your heart tremble, your sinews shake, and your haire to stand upright. Anglitora your lady and wife, hath dishonoured your bed, and polluted that sacred chamber of secresie, which none ought to know but onely you two ; that marriage vow she made in God's Holy Temple, hath she infringed, and untied the knot of nuptiall promise ; in a countrey far from hence, hath shee wrought this hated crime, in a country unpeopled lives shee, in a castle which is kept by a knight of a wanton demeanour ; thus live they two in adultery, there live

they secretly sleeping in wantonnesse, and therefore these seven yeares hath shee made herself the childe of shame ; all this with extreme grieve doe I unfold, and with a heart almost kild with sorrow doe I breathe out the dutie of a Servant : if I have offended, let my death make amends: for what I speake is truely delivered from a heart unfained.

All this time of this his sorrowfull discourse, stood the Red Rose Knight, in a bitter agonie, like one newly dropt from the cloudes, not knowing how to take these discourtesies ; one while purposing to bee revenged, and with his nailes to teare out the strumpets eyes, another while bewayling her weake nature, that so easily was wooon to lewdnesse ; but at last taking to him, (the virtue) patience, he resolved to travell to the castle, and with his meeke perswasions seeke to win her from her wickednesse, and to forget, forgive, and cast out of remembrance all these her unwomanlike demeanours, observing the proverbe, that faire meanes sooner winnes a woman than foule. Thus in company of his true servant the negar, hee tooke his journey toward the castle ; where (after foure moneths travell) they arrived ; the Red Rose Knight, by the direction of the negar, knocked, and in his pilgrimes habits, desired meate and lodging for himselfe and his guide.

The first that opened the gate, was his owne lady, who immediately, upon the sight of them blushed, as though some sudden feare had affrighted her ; yet dissemblingly colouring her knowledge of them, she in a charitable

manner gave them entertainment, and conducted them to a by roome, at the back side of the castle, into which place shee sent them (by her dwarfe) victuals from her owne table, with a command, that the next morning, they should avoyed, and never more trouble this place.

This message sent by the dwarfe, much disquieted the Red Rose Knight, and drove such amaze into his mind, that hee grew ignorant what to doe ; and seeing his appointed time very short to remaine there, he now thought fit to strikewhilst the iron was hot, and to discover what hee was : so taking the scarfe of jewels and rings tyed to his left side against his heart (which she knew perfectly well to be the gifts of her love) and by the dwarfe sent them her. The which no sooner shee beheld, but shee openly said to the Knight of the Castle, that their secret affections were discovered, and her husband in the habit of a Palmer made abode in her house, conducted thither by the moore, to bring their shame to light, and to carry her thence to England, there to be punished for her sinnes. Hereupon the knight and shee purposed the same night to rid themselves of that feare, and by some violent death to send the Palmer to his last abiding. Disquietnesse attended on all sides for that day, and every houre seemed ten till night approached, which at last came, though long lookt for. Then Anglitora in company of the knight of the castle, like unto murderers rose from their beds, even at that houre of night when mischiefes are acted, when no noyse was

heard but the barking of wolves, the howling of dogs, and the croaking of night owles, all assistance to blacke actions. In this manner came they into the lodging of the Palmer, who for wearinesse of his journies most soundly slept, little dreaming that such cruelty could be lodged in the bosome of his wedded wife; one whose love he had first gained with great danger, and alwaies esteemed as deare as his owne heart blood. All signes of duty had shee obscured, not any remembrance had shee of womanhood; marriage love was forgotten; their past joyes were as things never beene; not any thought of remorse remained within her, but shee more cruell then the new delivered beare, or the tyger starved for meat, by the helpe of the Knight of the Castle, tooke the scarfe of jewelles, (sent her from him the same evening) and by violence thrust them downe the Palmers throat: by which meanes they bereaved him of life, and without any solemnitie due to so brave a man, they buried him in a dunghill without the gate, not shedding so much as one teare for his death; so great was the envie of this his spitefull lady. The poor negar they set up to the middle in the ground so surely fastned, that by any meanes hee could not stir from thence, where wee will leave him wishing for death. The Red Rose Knight or rather the unhappy Palmer, in his unchristianlike grave, and the Knight of the Castle with the murtheresse Anglitora, to their surfetting banquets of sinne, and returne to the Black Knight, which had lost himselfe in the woods.

CHAP. VI.

How the Blacke Knight being lost in a Wildernesse became a Wild Man, how his Fathers Ghost appeared unto him, and in what manner he slewe his owne Mother.

By this time the Blacke Knight grew so naturall a wild-man, as though he had beene bred in the wilderness: for day by day he sported with lions, leopards, tygers, elephants, unicorns, and such like kind of beasts playing as familiarly with them as in King Arthurs court hee had done with gallant gentlemen. But marke how it happened one daye above another; hee chanced to walke downe into a valley where he sate himselfe downe by the rivers side, and in humane complaints bewailed his owne estate, how being borne of a princely race, descended royally, should thus consume his dayes in savage sort, amongst wilde beasts, and by no means could recover his libertie or free himselfe from that solitarie wilderness. Being in this distress of mind, a suddaine feare assayled him, his heart shriveled, his haire stood upright, the elements seemed to look dimme, a terrible tempest tore up huge trees, the wilde beasts roared and gathered on a heape together. Birdes fell livelesse from the ayre, the ground as it were trembled, and a sodaine alteration troubled each thing about him; in this amaze sate he a good time, marvelling what

should ensue ; at last there appeared (as he imagined) the ghost of his father newly murdered, with a countenance pale and wan, with hollow eyes (or none at all) gliding up and downe before him, casting such feareful frownes, as might make the stoutest heart in the world to tremble ; and at last, setting himselfe before the Blacke Knight, spake as followeth.

Feare not my sonne, I am the ghost of thy murdered father, returned from Pluto's hollow region : I came from that burning kingdome, where continually flames an everlasting furnace : from the fearefull pitte come I to thee for revenge. Oh thou my sonne, if ever gentle nature were plyant in thy boosome ; if ever thou tookest pleasure to hear thy fathers honours spoken of : if ever thou desirest to have thy life meritorious in this world, take to thee thy never failing courage, and revenge my death upon thy adulterous mother : thy mother now living in the filthinesse of shame, making the castle where shee now remains in, a lustful stewes ; there was I murdered, and there buried in a stinking dunghill ; no man gave mee funerall teares, nor any sorrowed for my death ; I that have dared death in the face, and purchast honour in many kingdomes, was slaine by my owne wife, by my neerest friend, by my second selfe, by Anglitora, by her whom the whole world admired for virtue. Rise, deare sonne, rise, and hast thee to that castle, polluted with the shame of thy wicked mother : Rise I say, and let the pavements of that castle be sprinkled with their detested blood, the blood of that

monster that hath not onely despoyled my marriage bedde of honoured dignities, but like a tyrant to her owne flesh hath murdered mee.

See how the angry heavens (as it were) doe threaten my revenge ; hearke how hell-furies doe howle and roare for my revenge ; my wifes adulterie at the hand of heaven deserves revenge ! My bleeding soule (Oh my sonne) wandreth in unquiet paths till thou workest revenge : then feare not (sonne) to act it : for duty, love, and nature, bindes thee to it. By heaven and by that great immortall throane of happiness ; by that low kingdome of eternall paines ; by the huge watery seas I past to follow her ; by earth and by the soules of all the mortall men that ever dyed, I command, charge, and constraine thee to persevere in this revenge : hence to that foule defamed castle, defamed by adulterie, defamed by murder ; there to my soule doe thy latest duty ; there wound thy cursed mothers brest, there sacrifice her lifes blood, there appease thy fathers ghost incenst with furie ; so shall my soule in ioy enter the fields of faire Elizium : But if thou provest cowardlike, and through feare deny to execute my glorious revenge, from this day henceforth shall my pale, wan, leane, and withered ghost with ghastly lookes and fearfull steps, pursue and follow thee. These were the words of his fathers ghost : and having spoken these words, with a grievous groane, he vanished. At this his suddaine departure the Blacke Knight cryed with a loud and fearfull voyce, saying.

My noble father, stay ; oh stay thy hasty steppes : once more let mee heare thee speake. Whither flyest

thou. Oh let me heare thy voyce againe : It will not be, he is vanished ; and my mother lives as a shame to all our generation. Oh thou staine of womanhood : oh thou bloody lionesse : oh brutish act : oh beastly desires : where shall I now find a place to shed teares in : for my heart is rent in tenne thousand pieces, and the terrour of this deed is too intollerable. Rest thou in peace, sweete father. Thou in thy life wert both wise and valiant : thy vertue, wisdom, and manhood, made the very enemies to love thee : Oh then, what fortune hadst thou, to die by the friendly trust of thy owne wife, my disloyall mother, thy nearest friend prov'd thy greatest enemy ; and by a woman's malice, that killed, that millions of foes could never daunt. Oh sweete Red Rose Knight ; most happy hadst thou beene to have dyed in the fields of bloody warre, and sealed thy lives quittance amongst renowned souldiers ; then had thy death beene more honourable, my wicked mother had not murdered thee, nor I beene inforst to take such bloody vengeance, as I intend (deare father) for thy sake : for let mee never breathe one day longer, nor view the next mornings rising sunne ; let mee ever live imprisoned in this wilderness, let nothing prosper that ever I take in hand, and here let the worlde end, if I cease to prosecute a mortall revenge, as the soule of my father hath commanded. Hereupon he set forward toward the castle, conducted by what chaunce the heavens had allotted him : not one steppe he knew aright, nor what course to take to finde the direct way : but it happened that an Ignis Fatuus (as hee thought) or a going fire, led him

the right way out of the forest directly to the castle where his dishonest mother made her abode. But coming neere unto the gates hee found all close, and neere unto the castle the blackamore set halfe way quicke into the earth, (having for want of food) eaten most part of his flesh from his armes whom the Blacke Knight soon digged up and kept alive, to be a furtherance to his intended revenge.

The poore Indian, being thus happily preserved from death, revealed all that had hapned in the said castle; how his mother lived in adultery, how his father was murdered, why himselfe was set quicke in the earth; and lastly for the love of his dead master he protested to conduct him through a secret vault into the castle, that in the dead of the night they might the easier accomplish their desired revenge; thus lingring secretly about the castle till the middle of the night: a time (as they imagined) to be the fittest for their tragicall businesse; at last the midnight houre came, and through a secret cell they entered under the castle into the lodging where his father was murdered. This is the place (quoth the negar) where my sad eyes beheld thy father both alive and dead. So going from thence into the chamber (which by chance and as ill lucke had appointed) was through negligence left open, hee shewed him the bedde where these adulterers lay secretly sleeping in each others arms. Oh dolefull sight, this lust hath made me fatherlesse, and ere long this weapon shall make mee motherlesse: so kneeling down upon his knees, in a

whispering manner hee said unto himselfe. You lowring destinies now weave up the webbe of their two lives that have lived too long. You infernall furies draw neare; assist mee thou revengefull God Nemesis, for on this sword sits now such a glorious revenge as being taken the worlde will applaude mee for a loving sonne. Having spoken these wordes, hee sheathed his sword up to the hilts in the boosome of the Knight of the Castle, who lying in the armes of Anglitora gave so deadly a groane that she immediately awaked; first looking to the knight that was slaine in her armes, then perceiving her sonne standing with his weapon drawne; yet wreaking in the blood of the dead knight, menacing likewise her death, with a wofull shrieke she breathed out these words. Oh what hast thou done my cruell sonne; thou hast slaine the miracle of humanitie; and one whom I have chosen to be my hearts paramour, and thy second father.

Oh, Lady, quoth the Blacke Knight, for mother is too proud a title for thee; what furie driveth thee to lament the deserved death of that lewde blood shedder, and not rather choose with heart rending sighes, to bewailè the death of my father, thy renowned husband, whose guiltlesse body, even dead, thou didst despise, by burying him inhumanly upon a dunghill; but heaven hath graunted, and earth hath agreed, detesting both thy misdeedes, and hath sent mee to sacrifice thy blood unto the soule of my murdered father. Whilst hee was speaking these words Anglitora arose from her bed, and

in her smock (which was of pure cambrick), shee kneeled to her sonne upon her bare knees, saying,

Oh, thou my deare sonne, whom once I nourisht in my painefull wombe, and fed thee with mine owne blood, whom oft I choicely dandled in my arms, when with lullabies and sweet kisses I rocked thee asleep; oh farre bee it from thee (my loving sonne) to harm that breast, from whom thou first receivedst life: of thee (my sonne) thy mother begging life; oh spare the life that once gave thee life, with bleeding teares I doe confesse my wanton offences, I doe confesse through me thy father dyed; then if confession of faults may merit mercie, pardon my life. Obscure not thy renowne with cruelty, making thyselfe unkinde and monstrous in murthering of thy mother. I charge thee by thy dutie that thou owest me; by all the bondes of love betwixt a mother and a sonne; by all the kindnesse shewed to thee in thy infancie, let thy mother live, that begs life upon her bare knees. Do not thou glory in my miseries; let not my teares whet on thy crueltie: let not thy minde bee bent to death and murder; be no savage monster; bee not unnaturall, rude, and brutish; let my intreaties prevaile to save my life; wound not the wombe that fostred thee, which now I tearmed wicked by onely fostring thee; what child can glut his eyes with gazing on his parent's wounds, and will not faint in beholding them.

Hereupon the Blacke Knight not able to endure to suffer his mother's further intreaties, lest pitie and re-

morse might mollifie his heart, and so grant her life (which to heaven to take away hee had deeply sworne), hee cut her off with these deadly words.

Lady, I am not made of flint nor adamant; in kinde regarde of calamitie I am almost stricke with remorse; but dutie must quite undoe all dutie; kinde must worke against kinde, all the powers of my body bee at mortall strife, and seeke to confound each other. Love turnes to hatred, nature turnes to wrath, and dutie to revenge, for mee thinkes my father's blood, with a groaning voyce, cryest to heaven for revenge: therefore to appease my father's angry spirit, here shalt thou yeeld up thy dearest blood. Here was hee ready to strike, and with his sword to finish up the tragedie, but that his grieved soule in kinde nature plucked backe his hand; whereupon with a great sigh he said.

Oh heavens, how am I grieved in mind. Father forgive me, I cannot kill my mother. And now againe meethinkes I see the pale shadow of my fathers ghost gliding before mine eyes; methinkes hee shewes me the manner of his murther: mee thinkes his angry looks threaten mee, and tels how that my heart is possest with cowardise, and childish feare; thou dost prevaile; oh father, even now receive this sacrifice of blood and death; this pleasing sacrifice. which to appease thy troubled soule I heare doe offer. And thus in speaking these wordes, with his sword hee split the deare heart of his mother; from whence the blood as from a gushing spring issued. Which when hee beheld, such a sudden

conceit of griefe entred his mind, considering that hee had slaine his owne mother, whom in dutie he ought to honour above all living women, that hee rather fell into a frenzie then a melancholly and so with a pale countenance and gastly lookes, with eyes sparkling like to a burning furnace, began to talke idly.

What have I done? Whom hath my bloody hand murthered? Now woe unto my soule, for I am worse then the viperous brood that eats out their dammes wombe to get life unto themselves: they doe but according to nature, I against all nature; for I have digged up the bosome that first gave mee life. Oh wicked wretch, where shall I now hide my head, for I have slaine myselfe in killing her: I have stained this chamber here with humane blood: the heavens abhorre mee for this deed: the world condemnes me for this murther, and hell furies will follow me with shame and terror: the Gods are grieved, men (methinks) flie my company; dead ghosts arise in my distresses; I see my mother comes with a brest bleeding, threatening confusion to my fortunes. Oh thou ugly spirit cease to follow mee, torment mee not alive, for the wrath of heaven is fallen upon my head. Dispaire, where art thou? I must find thee out, I will goe seeke thee through the world: and if in the world I find thee not, Ile saddle winged Pegasus, and scale the mantion place of Jove. I will ransake all the corners of the skie, I will throw downe the sunne, the moone, and starres: then leaving heaven I will goe seeke for despaire in the loathsome

poole of hell, there in Plutoes court will I binde blacke Cerberus up in chaines, the triple headed hellhound, that porter of hell gates, because he let Despaire passe from thence. In this franticke sort ran he up and downe the chamber, and at last with the nayles of his fingers, hee fell to grave upon the stone walls the picture of his mother, imitating Pigmalion, hoping to have life breathed into the same. Meane while the poore Indian with fleshlesse armes heaved up towards heaven, and on his bare knees, made his supplication to the Gods for the Blacke Knights recovery of his wits.

Oh you angry Heavens (quoth hee) revoke your heavy doomes, forget this crime, forgive this unnaturall murther; pity the state of this distressed Knight, and send some meanes to recover his senses. Thou bright lampe of heaven, thou eternall light, although in justice wee have deserved thy wrath, yet let my prayers, my never ceasing prayers, my hearts renting sighes, my deepe inforced teares, worke some remorse from thy incensed ire, ~~that~~ either this Knight may recover his lost senses, or set him free from death. Thus in a zealous manner prayed the poore negar, desiring God to lay the Knights fault upon his head, and reclaime his unbridled rage; which prayer was soone regarded by heaven, for the Blacke Knight had immediately his madnesse turned into a sad melancholly; and in a more gentle manner made his sad lamentations, as you shall heare in the next chapter.

But now the negar, that all the time of Anglitora's

murther stood in a trance, began now a little (considering the fright hee tooke at the Black Knights madnesse) to summon againe together his naturall senses, and perceiving the unchaste lady dead, cold, pale, wan, lying weltring in her goare and the blood of her false heart (shed by her owne child) all besprinkled about the chambre, sayd as followeth.

Now (quoth the negar betwixt life and death,) have you showne yourselfe a dutifull sonne, and nobly revenged the death of your father. These were the last words of the poor negar Indian, which as then sunke downe, and never after breathed. Thereupon came forth the Dwarfe of the Castle, with great store of treasure, proffering the same to the Blacke Knight; who nothing thirsting after covetousnesse, refused it, and withall tooke the Dwarfe in satisfaction for the negars death, and crammed the treasure downe his throat; and after buried the two servants together in one grave. This being done he digged up his fathers body from the dunghill, and brought it to the chamber where his mother lay, and after in an abbey yard belonging to the castle, he buried them both likewise in one grave. This being done hee kneeled thereupon and made his complaint in this manner.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Blacke Knights melancholly lamentations over the grave of his parents; and of other things that hapned.

ON thrice happy for evermore bee this ground that

contains the bodies of my unfortunate parents ; for this earth hath received the sweet darling of nature ; and the onely delight of the whole world ; the sunshine of Christendome, and the glory of mankind ; oh thrice happy be the grasse, that from henceforth shall grow upon this grave ; let never sithe touch it, nor crafty lurking serpent with venemous breath, or deadly poyson hurt it. Let no lyons pawes, nor beares foot, tread upon it ; let no beasts borne in any manner abuse it, let no birds with pecking, no creeping filthy vermine, no winters nipping frost, no nightly salting dewes, no rage of the parching sunnes heat, nor starres have power from heaven, nor fearfull tempest nor horrible lightning in any manner annoy it. Let no ploughman drive hither his weary oxen, nor shepherds bring hither their sheepe, lest by the bulls rage it be harmed, or by the harmlesse sheepe it be eaten : but let it for ever grow, that the displaying thereof may reach to heaven : and may from henceforth this grave be ever accounted sacred ; and may the grasse be ever sprinkled with sweet waters. Some good man upon this grave set a burning taper, that then for every anguish of my heart I may beat my brests, till my fistes have stricken the winde from my body ; and that my soule may beare them company into Elizium. Come you wanton fleshly satyres ; come you friendly fawnes ; come you fayries and dryades, and sing sweet epitaphes ; lift up your voyces to heaven, and let your prayses be in the honour of my parents. Myselfe, like a wan, pale, and dead man, will beare you company : I will wearie the world

with my complaints ; I will make huge streames with my teares ; such streames as no banke shall barre ; such streames as no drought shall dry. But alas what doe I meane to repeat these severall lamentations ; since my deare parents be dead : since from the world they are parted ; since they are buried without solemnitie ; since my delights are all enclosed in the ground. Yet will I still here make my complaints, though no good ease comes thereby, adding teares to teares, and sorrowes to sorrowes. Oh frowning fortune, oh unlucky starres, oh cursed day that ever I did this deed, for now no sense, nor knowledge, takes their unsensible bodies of my griefes : in this grave there is no feeling ; in death there is no pitie taken. Oh thou Silvanus, thou commander of these mountaines, helpe mee poore hellesse soule to shed teares : for my religion, for my devotion, and countries sake helpe mee : either let me have some comfort in my sorrowes, or let mee in death beare my parents company. Thou seest what torments I suffer ; how my heart trembles, how my eyes flow with teares, how my head is with teares possest, how my soule is full of horrible anguish : all this thou seest, and yet it little grieves thee to see it. Oh thou churlish ground, from henceforth cease any more to beare fruit : cease to be deckt with flowers, cease to be mantled in greene, for the purest flowers are withered ; thy garlands are decayed ; my deare parents are too untimely bereft of life ; their sweet bodies thou harbourst, and in thy wombe deliverest them as food unto wormes.

Therefore thou cruell earth howle, and mourne, for thou art unworthy of such blessed bodies. And now, oh you pittifull heavens, heare my complaints, convey them to the soules of my deceased parents ; for my lamentations by the gentle windes are blown from the east unto the west ; the dry land and the watry seas are witnesses to them ; therefore no day shall rise but it shall heare my complaints ; no night shall come but it shall give eare unto my moanes ; neither day nor night shall be free from my heart-breaking cryes. If that I groane meethinkes the trees are bended, as though they pittied my teares. The very ground (for grieve) I see alters her complexion. All that I heare, all that I see, all that I feele, gives fresh increase to my sorrow. I will never henceforth come in peopled towne, nor inhabited cittie, but wander all alone up and downe by low valleyes and steepy rockes, or I will dwell in darke dennes frequented onely by wilde beastes, where no path of man was ever seene, or to the woods I will goe, so darke, and beset so thicke with shaddow branches, that no sunne may shine there by day, nor no starre by night may be seene, whereas is heard no voyce but the outcrys of horrible goblins, the balefull shrikes of nightowles, the unluckie sounds of ravens and crowes ; there shall mine eyes bee made watry fountaines ; there will I make such plaints as beastes shall mourne to heare them ; such plaintes will I make as shall rend and rive strong trees, make wilde panthers tame, and mollifie hard flinty stones ; and if by chance that sleepe oppresse mee, on the bare

and cold ground shall these wofull limbes rest, the greeneturf shall serve as a pillow for my head: boughes and branches of trees shall cover mee; and then I hope some venomous serpent will speedily give mee my deaths wound, that this my poore soule may bee released from flesh and blood: by which meanes I may passe to those fields, those faire Elizium fields, whereas my murdered parents daily resort. In this manner complained the Blacke Knight upon his parents grave, three dayes and nights together, still kneeling upon the cold ground, and could not by any imagination bee comforted: every thing his eyes beheld renewed fresh sorrow, and drew on new lamentations: but at last the power of heaven intending to graunt him some ease cast his distressed senses into a quiet slumber, where lying upon his fathers grave, we will let him for a time rest.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Fayerie Knight came to be called the Worlds Triumph, of his arrivall in England, of the two Knights deaths, and of the Proverbs used of three Cities in England.

You have read in the first part of this Historie how the Fayerie Knight, the sonne of Cælia, begot by the Red Rose Knight, was committed (by his mother, at her death) to the keeping of the Ladies of the Land, for then was there but few men living, being a countrey onely of women: and now being of lusty age, and a knight of renowned valour, he betooke himselfe to tra-

vell ; the onely cause to finde his father, or some of his kindred, whom he had never seene.

Many were the countries hee passed, but more the dangers hee endured ; all which for this time wee omit: onely a little speake of three guifts given him by an hermite, that had three exceeding virtues : for comming to an island to seeke adventures, it was his chance to save a young beautifull mayden from ravishing by a satyricall wildman, for hee having tyed the golden lockes of her hayre to two knotty brambles, and being ready to take his pleasure upon her, the Fayerie Knight comming by, and seeing that dishonour and violence offred to so young a virgin, with his sword at one blow paired away the wildmans head, and so went with the mayden home to her fathers house, which was an hermitage some miles distant off ; where being no sooner come, but the good old man, having a head more white then silver, but a heart more heavier then lead, by reason of the want of his daughter, so cruelly taken from him, began at her sight to be so cheered, that hee had not the power (for joy) to speake in a good space, but at last, taking the Fayerie Knight by the hand, hee led him to an inward roome, where hee banqueted him with such cheere as his hermitage afforded, and after in lieu of his daughters resc Chew, hee gave him three such gifts, and of three such virtues, as the like seldome had Knight. The first was a ring, which whosoever did weare should never dye by treason. The second, a sword : that on what gate soever it stricke it would presently fly open.

The third and last a viall of such drinke that whosoever tasted thereof should sodainely forget all passed sorowes.

Having received these three gifts of the good old hermite, he departed and travelled without any adventure till he came and found the Blacke Knight asleepe upon his fathers grave; which when the Fayerie Knight had awaked, in countenance they were so alike as nature had made them both one, (for indeed they were brothers by the fathers side, the one true borne, the other a bastard) yet at the first sight, such a secret affection grew betwixt them, that they plighted their fayths each to each other, vowing never to part friendships. But when the Blacke Knight had revealed his birth and parentage, his fathers name, and place of birth, the Fayerie Knight resolved himselfe that he had found a brother as well in nature as condition; but when hee heard the story of his fathers life, and the manner of his death, with the murther of Anglitora his unchast wife, hee could not choose but shed teares, whereof plenty descended from his faire eyes: whereupon hee tooke occasion to speake as followeth.

Heaven rest thy sweet soule (my unknowne father), and may the fruits of thee prove as famous in the world as thou hast been; but more fortunate in their marriage choyse; as for my stepmother, though her unchast life have made her infamous to all womankind, yet this in charitie I desire, that when shee comes to Plutoes realms, that Proserpine may send her to the blessed

fields of Elizium ; in remembrance of whom, in this world, (if ever we arrive in that noble country of England where my Knightly Father was borne) wee will there erect her a stately tombe ; yet no epitaph shall shew her disloyall life, nor the cause of her death ; onely in letters of beaten gold shall remain engraved upon her tombe the name of Anglitora, daughter to Prester John, and wife to the worthy Red Rose Knight. Hereupon hee gave his new found brother (the Blacke Knight) his viall of drinke which the hermite had given him ; who no sooner had tasted, but all former griefes were forgotten ; he remembered not the death of his Father, nor the murther of his mother, nor what sorrow he had sustayned in the wilderness, but like a joconde knight, gyrt his sword round about him, and stood on thornes, till he was set forward to seeke martial adventures. Hereupon these two knights departed towards England, and performed many noble deeds of chivalry by the way : but amongst all others, being in the Turkish court, (this is worthy to be noted) for with one boxe of the eare, the Black Knight killed the Turkes Sonne starke dead : for which cause by treason were their lives conspired, and the following night had their lodging entred by twelve of the Turkes guard, with an intent to murther them ; but by reason of the Inchanted Ring in the which they put both their little fingers, the guard of a sodaine fell all fast in a traunce ; hereupon the two knights departed the Turkish court. But no sooner were they out of the citie,

but a troupe of armed knights pursued them, and followed them so nerely, that they were forced to enter a castle that stood by the sea-side, wherein no creature had abyding: comming to the gate, the Fayerie Knight with his sword strucke thereat, and it presently opened; wherein being no sooner entred, but the armed knights of the Turkish nation closed them fast in, and caused the gates to be walled up with free-stone, and so departed. Now were these two knights in more danger of death, than ever they had been in all their lives; and sure they had starved had not good policie preserved their lives; for the castle walles wereso high, that none durst venture down without great danger. As in greatest extremity, man's wit is the quickest for invention: so the two knights cut off all the haire from their two heads (which were very long) and therewithal made a long twisted line or cord, with the which they steal from the top of the wall to the ground. But this mischance hapned: as the Fayerie Knight glided downe, the coard broke, and his body took such a violent blow against the stonie ground, that it strucke breath quite out of his body, no life by the Black Knight could be perceived, but that his soul was for ever divided. This of all misfortunes was held the extreamest: therefore in great grieve he breathed forth this lamentation.

Oh you partiall fates (quoth hee) oh you unjust destinies; why have you reft two lives by wounding one; now let the sunne forbear his wonted light, let heate and cold, let drought and moysture, let earth and ayre, let fire and water, be all mingled and confounded toge-

ther ; let that old confused Chaos returne againe, and here let the world end. And now you heavens, this is my request, that my soule may presently forsake this flesh ; I have no soule of mine owne, for it is the soule of the Fayerie Knight, for but one soule is common to us both ; then how can I live having my soule departed, which spightfull death hath now seperated ? Oh thou my knightly brother though the fates deny to give thee life, yet in spight of them Ile follow thee. You heavens receive this halfe soule of my true friend and let not life and death part us ; with eagles wings will I fly after him and in loves celestiall throne joyne with him in friendship, we two in life were but one, one will, one heart, one minde, one soule made us one ; one life kept us both alive, one being dead drawes the other unto death ; therefore as wee lived in love, so will we dye in love : and on one grave we may inter both our bodies ; how glorious and happy were my death to die with my beloved friend ; how doe I loath this life in living alone without my deare brother : whereupon drawing his sword from his side, he sayd,

Oh thou woful weapon, even thou shall be the meane to ridde my soule from this prison of body. Oh faith, unfained, oh hand of sacred friendship ; I am resolved both with the force of heart, hand, and armes, to give my heart deaths deadly wound : for now my noble Fayerie Knight this blood I offer up unto thy soule. But being ready with his sword to pierce his owne hart, hee saw a lively blood spread in his friends face, and those eyes that were so dolefully closed up, began now to looke

abroad ; and the countenance that was so pale and wan, recovered a fresh complexion ; whereupon the Blacke Knight stayed from his desperate resolution, and from a bloody tragedian became the recoverer of his brothers life : who after a while, began to be perfect sensible : so binding his bruised bones together, they went a ship-board upon a ship that lay at anchor at the next port, making for England, so the next morning (the wind served well) the pilots hoysted sayle, merrily floating on the waters.

Ten weekes had not passed toward the finishing of a yeare before they arrived on the Chaulkie Cliffs of England ; upon which they had no sooner sett footing, but with their warme lips they gently kissed the cold earth. This is the land of promised glory (said the Fayrie Knight) to find this land I have indured many miseries : to find this land I have passed many countries, and in this land, must I seale up the last quittance of my life, here shall my bones rest, for I am lawfully descended from the loyns of an English knight : peace be in my end, for all my dayes have been spent in much trouble. In such like discourses left they the shore side, and travailing further into the land, they met with one of King Arthures Knights, named Sir Launcelot Du Lac, so old and lame, that through his bruises in chivalrie, he seemed rather an impotent creature, than a Knight at Armes ; yet at the sight of these two adventrous knights, his blood seemed to grow young, and he that before

could not march a mile on foot for a kingdome, now went as lively as any of the two other knights did. First came they to London, where for their father's sake they were (by the governours) most gallantly entertained: the streets were hung round with arras hangings and tapestre works; pageants were builded up in every street, the conduits ran with wine, and a solemn holy day was then proclaimed to be kept yearly upon that day.

After this the King which then raigned, ordained a solemn justing to be kept in his court, and held in a great honour for forty days; to which knightly sports resorted the chiefest flowers of chivalry from all countries, as Kings, Princes, Dukes, Earls, Lords, and Knights, and for chief challenger and champion for the country, was the Fairy Knight who for his matchless manhood therein shewn, had this title to be given him to be called 'The World's Triumph.'

After this, being desirous to see the City of Lincoln, where the Red Rose Knight was born, he in company of his brother and true friend The Black Knight, and old Sir Lancelot du Lac rode thither: at whose coming into the city, the great bell (called Tom a Lincolne) was rung an hour, which as then was seldom done to any except kings and renowned warriors, returning victoriously from bloody battels.

Here builded they a most sumptuous minster; and likewise a most stately tomb in remembrance of their parents, the like as then no place of England afforded.

Thus having left the noble seats of chivalry, they lived a life zealous and most pleasing to God, erecting many almes-houses for poor people, giving thereto great wealth and treasure, and when nature had ended their days, they were buried in the same minster both in one tomb, with like solemnities : so richly set up with pillars of gold, that above all it grew the most famous : whereupon since that time was the old proverb, of three cities grown common to all, in these words, ' Lincoln is, London was, York shall be.'

FINIS.

